

Project Manual

Construction Documents

Liberty Public Schools District Technology Remodel

1000 Kent Street
Liberty, Missouri 64068

Prepared For:

Liberty Public Schools
8 Victory Lane
Liberty, Missouri 64068

HM Project No: 23022
Issue Date: August 31, 2023

Contents:

Volume 1: Introductory Information, Bidding and Contracting Requirements,
Division 1 through Division 12.

Volume 2: Division 22 through Division 32.



we design the future®

HOLLISANDMILLER.COM

1828 Walnut Street Suite 922 | Kansas City, MO 64108 | 816.442.7700
Missouri | Colorado



SECTION 000101 - PROJECT TEAM DIRECTORY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 CONSTRUCTION MANAGER INFORMATION

- A. Newkirk Novak Construction Partners has been selected as the Construction Manager for this project, and as such, will act as the Owner's representative.
- B. All communication, both written and oral, must be directed through the Construction Manager.

1.2 PROJECT TEAM INFORMATION

- A. **PROJECT:**
 - 1. Name: District Technology Remodel
 - 2. Location: 1000 Kent Street , Liberty , Missouri 64068
 - 3. Project No: 23022
- B. **OWNER:**
 - 1. Name: Liberty Public Schools
 - 2. Address: 8 Victory Lane, Liberty , Missouri 64068
 - 3. Contact: Steve Aldrich, Director of Facilities and Grounds or Justin Presson, Project Manager
 - 4. Phone: 816.736.5448
- C. **CONSTRUCTION MANAGER:**
 - 1. Name: Newkirk Novak Construction Partners
 - 2. Address: 11200 W. 79th Street, Lenexa, Kansas 66241
 - 3. Contact: Brandon Staley
 - 4. Email: Brandon.Staley@newkirknovak.com
 - 5. Phone: 913.312.9535.
- D. **ARCHITECT:**
 - 1. Name: Hollis + Miller Architects, Inc.
 - 2. Address: 1828 Walnut Street, Suite 922, Kansas City, MO 64108.
 - 3. Contact: Hillary L'Ecuyer
 - 4. Email: HLEcuyer@HollisandMiller.com
 - 5. Phone: 816.442.7700 / Fax: 816.599.2545
- E. **CIVIL ENGINEER:**
 - 1. Name: MKEC Engineering, Inc.
 - 2. Address: 11827 W 112th Street, Suite 200, Overland Park, Kansas 66210.
 - 3. Contact: Braden Taylor
 - 4. Email: btaylor@mkec.com
 - 5. Phone: 913.317.9390.
- F. **STRUCTURAL ENGINEER:**
 - 1. Name: Hollis + Miller Architects, Inc.
 - 2. Address: 1828 Walnut Street, Suite 922, Kansas City, MO 64108.
 - 3. Contact: Hannah Jones
 - 4. Email: hjones@hollisandmiller.com
 - 5. Phone: 816.442.7700 / Fax: 816.599.2545
- G. **MEP ENGINEER:**
 - 1. Name: Smith and Boucher
 - 2. Address: 25618 W 103rd Street, Olathe, Kansas 66061.
 - 3. Contact: Ryan Diediker.
 - 4. Email: rdiediker@smithboucher.com
 - 5. Phone: 913.345.2127.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 000101

SECTION 000105 - CERTIFICATIONS PAGE

ARCHITECT

I HEREBY, PURSUANT TO RSMO 327.411, STATE THAT THE SPECIFICATIONS INTENDED TO BE AUTHENTICATED BY MY SEAL ARE LIMITED TO SPECIFICATIONS LISTED BELOW:

DIVISION 1 SECTIONS:	011000, 012100, 012200, 012300, 012500, 013100, 013200, 013233, 013300, 014000, 014200, 014529, 016000, 017419, 017700, 017823, 017839, 017900.
DIVISION 2 SECTION:	024119.
DIVISION 3 SECTION:	-
DIVISION 4 SECTION:	040100.
DIVISION 5 SECTION:	055000.
DIVISION 6 SECTIONS:	62023, 066400.
DIVISION 7 SECTIONS:	072419, 072500, 072726, 074400, 076200, 078413, 078446, 079200.
DIVISION 8 SECTIONS:	081113, 081416, 084113, 085613, 088000.
DIVISION 9 SECTIONS:	092116, 092900, 093000, 095113, 096513, 096519, 096723, 096813, 097723, 099113, 099123, 099600.
DIVISION 10 SECTIONS:	101100, 101400, 101423, 102113, 102600, 102800, 104413, 104416.
DIVISION 11 SECTION:	-
DIVISION 12 SECTIONS:	122113, 123200, 123666
DIVISION 32 SECTIONS:	323113, 323119

I HEREBY DISCLAIM ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ALL OTHER SPECIFICATIONS, DRAWINGS, ESTIMATES, REPORTS, OR OTHER DOCUMENTS OR INSTRUMENTS RELATING TO OR INTENDED TO BE USED FOR ANY PART OR PARTS OF THE ARCHITECTURAL OR ENGINEERING PROJECT OR SURVEY.

KEVIN NELSON _____

AUGUST 31, 2023 _____

ARCHITECT

DATE



AUGUST 31, 2023

CERTIFICATION PAGE

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER

I HEREBY STATE, PURSUANT TO RSMO 327.411, THAT THE SPECIFICATIONS INTENDED TO BE AUTHENTICATED BY MY SEAL ARE LIMITED TO SPECIFICATIONS LISTED BELOW:

DIVISION 3 SECTION: 033000.
DIVISION 4 SECTION: 042000
DIVISION 5 SECTION: 051200, 054000
DIVISION 6 SECTION: 061000.

I HEREBY DISCLAIM ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ALL OTHER SPECIFICATIONS, DRAWINGS, ESTIMATES, REPORTS, OR OTHER DOCUMENTS OR INSTRUMENTS RELATING TO OR INTENDED TO BE USED FOR ANY PART OR PARTS OF THE ARCHITECTURAL OR ENGINEERING PROJECT OR SURVEY.

DAVID KRELL

AUGUST 31, 2023

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER

DATE



SECTION 000105 – CERTIFICATIONS & SEALS

Civil Engineer:

I hereby state, pursuant to RSMo 327.411, that the Specifications intended to be authenticated by my seal are limited to Specification Sections listed below:

Division 31 Sections: 311000 & 312000
Division 32 Sections: 321216, 321313, 321373
Division 33 Sections: 333100 & 334100

I hereby disclaim any responsibility for all other specifications, drawings estimates, reports, or other documents or instruments relating to or intended to be used for any part or parts of the architectural or engineering project or survey.

Engineers:

Date



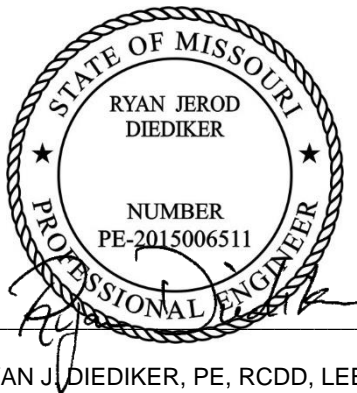
SECTION 000105 - CERTIFICATIONS PAGE-MEP

MEP ENGINEER

I HEREBY, PURSUANT TO RSMO 327.411, STATE THAT THE SPECIFICATIONS INTENDED TO BE AUTHENTICATED BY MY SEAL ARE LIMITED TO SPECIFICATIONS LISTED BELOW:

DIVISION 22 SECTIONS:	220500, 220513, 220516, 220519, 220523, 220529, 220553, 220719, 221116, 221119, 221123, 221316, 221319, 223300, 224000, 224700
DIVISION 23 SECTIONS:	230500, 230529, 230553, 230593, 230713, 230719, 230900, 232113, 232300, 233113, 233300, 233416, 233600, 233713, 236200, 237313.13, 238123.18, 238239
DIVISION 26 SECTIONS:	260010, 260519, 260526, 260529, 260533.13, 260533.16, 260536, 260544, 260553, 260923, 262416, 262716, 262726, 262816, 263213.13, 263600, 265119
DIVISION 27 SECTIONS:	270010, 270528, 271100, 271513
DIVISION 28 SECTIONS:	280500, 280513, 283111

I HEREBY DISCLAIM ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ALL OTHER SPECIFICATIONS, DRAWINGS, ESTIMATES, REPORTS, OR OTHER DOCUMENTS OR INSTRUMENTS RELATING TO OR INTENDED TO BE USED FOR ANY PART OR PARTS OF THE ARCHITECTURAL OR ENGINEERING PROJECT OR SURVEY.



08.31.2023

RYAN J. DIEDIKER, PE, RCDD, LEED AP

DATE

DOCUMENT 000110 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

Project Name: Liberty School District - District Technology Remodel
Project No.: 23022
Site Address 1000 Kent Street
City, State Zip Liberty, Missouri 64068

Revisions	Date

Latest Revision Original Issue

INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION

000101	Project Team Directory	08.31.2023
000105	Certifications and Seals	08.31.2023
000110	Table of Contents	08.31.2023

BIDDING REQUIREMENTS

(Refer to Construction Manager's Front End Manual for additional Bidding Requirements)

CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

(Refer to Construction Manager's Front End Manual for additional Contracting Requirements)

DIVISION 1 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

011000	Summary	08.31.2023
012100	Allowances	08.31.2023
012200	Unit Prices	08.31.2023
012300	Alternates	08.31.2023
012500	Substitution Procedures	08.31.2023
013100	Project Management and Coordination	08.31.2023
013200	Construction Progress Documentation	08.31.2023
013233	Photographic Documentation	08.31.2023
013300	Submittal Procedures	08.31.2023
014000	Quality Requirements	08.31.2023
014200	References	08.31.2023
014529	Testing and Inspections	08.31.2023
016000	Product Requirements	08.31.2023
017419	Construction Waste Management & Disposal	08.31.2023
017700	Closeout Procedures	08.31.2023
017823	Operation and Maintenance Data	08.31.2023
017839	Project Record Documents	08.31.2023
017900	Demonstration and Training	08.31.2023

DIVISION 2 – EXISTING CONDITIONS

024119	Selective Demolition	08.31.2023
--------	----------------------	------------

DIVISION 3 – CONCRETE

033000	Cast-in-Place Concrete	08.31.2023
--------	------------------------	------------

DIVISION 4 - MASONRY

040100	Masonry Restoration and Cleaning	08.31.2023
042000	Unit Masonry	08.31.2023

DIVISION 5 - METALS

051200	Structural Metal Framing	08.31.2023
054000	Cold-Formed Metal Framing	08.31.2023
055000	Metal Fabrications	08.31.2023

DIVISION 6 – WOOD AND PLASTICS

061000	Rough Carpentry	08.31.2023
062023	Interior Finish Carpentry	08.31.2023
066400	Plastic Paneling	08.31.2023

DIVISION 7 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

072419	Exterior Insulation & Finish System (EIFS)	08.31.2023
072500	Weather Barriers	08.31.2023
072726	Fluid-Applied Air Barrier Coatings	08.31.2023
074400	Concrete Faced Rigid Insulation	08.31.2023
076200	Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim	08.31.2023
078413	Penetration Firestopping	08.31.2023
078446	Fire Resistive Joint Systems	08.31.2023
079200	Joint Sealants	08.31.2023

DIVISION 8 - DOORS AND WINDOWS

081113	Hollow Metal Doors and Frames	08.31.2023
081416	Flush Wood Doors	08.31.2023
084113	Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts	08.31.2023
085613	Transaction Windows	08.31.2023
087100	Door Hardware	08.31.2023
088000	Glazing	08.31.2023

DIVISION 9 - FINISHES

092116	Non-Structural Metal Framing	08.31.2023
092900	Gypsum Board	08.31.2023
093000	Tiling	08.31.2023
095113	Acoustical Panel Ceilings	08.31.2023
096513	Resilient Base and Accessories	08.31.2023
096519	Resilient Tile Flooring	08.31.2023
096723	Resinous Flooring	08.31.2023
096813	Tile Carpeting	08.31.2023
097723	Fabric-Wrapped Panels	08.31.2023
099113	Exterior Painting	08.31.2023
099123	Interior Painting	08.31.2023
099600	High-Performance Coatings	08.31.2023

DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES

101100	Visual Display Units	08.31.2023
101400	Signage	08.31.2023
101423	ADA and Code Signage	08.31.2023
102113	Toilet Compartments	08.31.2023
102600	Wall and Door Protection	08.31.2023
102800	Toilet, Bath & Laundry Accessories	08.31.2023
104413	Fire Extinguisher Cabinets	08.31.2023
104416	Fire Extinguishers	08.31.2023

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

122113	Horizontal Louver Blinds	08.31.2023
123200	Manufactured Wood Casework	08.31.2023
123666	Solid Surfacing Countertops	08.31.2023

DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING

220500	Common Work Results for Plumbing	08.31.2023
220513	Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment	08.31.2023
220516	Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping	08.31.2023
220519	Meters and Gauges for Plumbing Piping	08.31.2023
220523	General Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping	08.31.2023
220529	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment	08.31.2023
220553	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment	08.31.2023
220719	Plumbing Piping Insulation	08.31.2023
221116	Domestic Water Piping	08.31.2023
221119	Domestic Water Piping Specialties	08.31.2023
221123	Domestic Water Piping Pumps	08.31.2023
221316	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping	08.31.2023
221319	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties	08.31.2023
223300	Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters	08.31.2023
224000	Plumbing Fixtures	08.31.2023
224700	Drinking Fountains/Water Coolers	08.31.2023

DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

230500	Common Work Results for HVAC	08.31.2023
230529	Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment	08.31.2023
230553	HVAC System Identification	08.31.2023
230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC	08.31.2023
230713	Duct Insulation	08.31.2023
230719	HVAC Piping Insulation	08.31.2023
230900	Instrumentation and Control for HVAC	08.31.2023
232113	Hydronic Piping	08.31.2023
232300	Refrigerant Piping	08.31.2023
233113	Metal Ducts	08.31.2023
233300	Duct Accessories	08.31.2023
233416	Centrifugal HVAC Fans	08.31.2023
233600	Air Terminal Units	08.31.2023
233713	Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles	08.31.2023
236200	Packaged Compressor and Condenser Units	08.31.2023
237313.13	Indoor, Basic Air-Handling Units	08.31.2023
238123.18	Computer-Room, Rack-Cooling Equipment	08.31.2023
238239	Cabinet Unit Heaters	08.31.2023

DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL

260010	Supplemental Requirements for Electrical	08.31.2023
260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables	08.31.2023
260526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems	08.31.2023
260529	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems	08.31.2023
260533.13	Conduits for Electrical Systems	08.31.2023
260533.16	Boxes and Covers for Electrical Systems	08.31.2023
260536	Cable Trays for Electrical Systems	08.31.2023
260544	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling	08.31.2023
260553	Identification for Electrical Systems	08.31.2023
260923	Lighting Control Devices	08.31.2023
262416	Panelboards	08.31.2023
262716	Electrical Cabinets and Enclosures	08.31.2023
262726	Wiring Devices	08.31.2023

	Latest Revision	Original Issue
262816	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers	08.31.2023
263213.13	Diesel-Engine-Driven Generator Sets	08.31.2023
263600	Transfer Switches	08.31.2023
265119	LED Interior Lighting	08.31.2023
DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS		
270010	Supplemental Requirements for Communications	08.31.2023
271100	Communications Equipment Room Fittings	08.31.2023
271513	Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling	08.31.2023
DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC ACCESS CONTROL AND INTRUSION DETECTION		
280500	Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security	08.31.2023
280513	Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security	08.31.2023
283111	Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System	08.31.2023
DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK		
311000	Site Clearing	08.31.2023
312000	Earth Moving	08.31.2023
DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS		
321216	Asphalt Paving	08.04.2023
321313	Concrete Paving	08.31.2023
321373	Concrete Paving Joint Sealants	08.31.2023
323113	Chain Link Fences and Gates	08.31.2023
323119	Decorative Metal Fences and Gates	08.31.2023
DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES		
334100	Storm Utility Drainage Piping	08.31.2023

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 220500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 5. Sleeves.
 - 6. Escutcheons.
 - 7. Grout.
 - 8. Plumbing demolition.
 - 9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 10. Painting and finishing.
 - 11. Concrete bases.
 - 12. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
 - 1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
 - 2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
 - 3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
 - 4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
 - 1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
 - 2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Transition fittings.
 - 2. Dielectric fittings.
 - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 4. Escutcheons.

- B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation with all other trades. Refer to section 230500 'Common Work Results for HVAC', paragraphs 1.3 and 1.4 for specific requirements regarding coordination procedures required.
- B. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for plumbing installations.
- C. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- D. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for plumbing items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BA91, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 1. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
 2. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
 3. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
 4. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Dresser Industries, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Incorporated (The); Pipe Products Div.
 - d. JCM Industries.
 - e. Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - f. Viking Johnson.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
 2. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling.
 3. Underground Piping NPS 2 and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling.
 4. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eslon Thermoplastics.
 - b. Pre-approved equal.
- C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.
 - b. Pre-approved equal.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. NIBCO INC.
 - b. NIBCO, Inc.; Chemtrol Div.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
- E. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.

- b. Fernco, Inc.
- c. Mission Rubber Company.
- d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
- e. Pre-approved equal.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Eclipse, Inc.
 - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
 - h. Pre-approved equal.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corp.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Perfection Corp.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Co. of America.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Plastic, carbon steel, or stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating or stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLUMBING DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove plumbing systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
 - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - 4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
 - 5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - h. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.

- i. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 - 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
 - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
 - 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
 - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
 - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
 - 3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - 4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 5. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 6. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
- L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
 - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
 - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Painting of plumbing systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.7 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases a minimum of 4 inches and a maximum of 6 inches deep, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" or "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.8 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.9 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.10 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for plumbing equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.

H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 220500

SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in plumbing equipment schedules or Sections.
- B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
 - 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split phase.
 - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 220513

SECTION 220516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Flexible-hose packless expansion joints.
 - 2. Metal-bellows packless expansion joints.
 - 3. Rubber packless expansion joints.
 - 4. Grooved-joint expansion joints.
 - 5. Pipe loops and swing connections.
 - 6. Alignment guides and anchors.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.
- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each anchor and alignment guide indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for thermal expansion of piping systems and for selecting and designing expansion joints, loops, and swing connections.
 - 2. Anchor Details: Detail fabrication of each anchor indicated. Show dimensions and methods of assembly and attachment to building structure.
 - 3. Alignment Guide Details: Detail field assembly and attachment to building structure.
 - 4. Schedule: Indicate type, manufacturer's number, size, material, pressure rating, end connections, and location for each expansion joint.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of expansion joint, from manufacturer.
- E. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PACKLESS EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Flexible-Hose Packless Expansion Joints:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - b. Flexicraft Industries.
 - c. Flex Pression Ltd.

- d. Metraflex, Inc.
- e. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
- f. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Description: Manufactured assembly with inlet and outlet elbow fittings and two flexible-metal-hose legs joined by long-radius, 180-degree return bend or center section of flexible hose.
- 3. Flexible Hose: Corrugated-metal inner hoses and braided outer sheaths.
- 4. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Copper-alloy fittings with solder-joint end connections.
 - a. Bronze hoses and single-braid bronze sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 340 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
 - b. Bronze hoses and double-braid bronze sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 500 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
- 5. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Copper-alloy fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 300 psig at 70 deg F and 225 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 420 psig at 70 deg F and 315 psig at 450 deg F ratings.
- 6. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Stainless-steel fittings with threaded end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 450 psig at 70 deg F and 325 psig at 600 deg F (2250 kPa at 315 deg C) ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 700 psig at 70 deg F and 515 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
- 7. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6: Stainless-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 200 psig at 70 deg F and 145 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 275 psig at 70 deg F and 200 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
- 8. Expansion Joints for Steel Piping NPS 8 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel fittings with flanged end connections.
 - a. Stainless-steel hoses and single-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 125 psig at 70 deg F and 90 psig at 600 deg F ratings.
 - b. Stainless-steel hoses and double-braid, stainless-steel sheaths with 165 psig at 70 deg F and 120 psig at 600 deg F ratings.

B. Metal-Bellows Packless Expansion Joints:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Adasco Manufacturing LLC.
 - b. American BOA, Inc.
 - c. Badger Industries, Inc.
 - d. Expansion Joint Systems, Inc.
 - e. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - f. Flexicraft Industries.
 - g. Flex Pression Ltd.
 - h. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 - i. Flo Fab inc.
 - j. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - k. Metraflex, Inc.
 - l. Proco Products, Inc.
 - m. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
 - n. Tozen Corporation.
 - o. Unaflex.
 - p. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
 - q. Universal Metal Hose; a subsidiary of Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - r. U.S. Bellows, Inc.
 - s. WahlcoMetroflex.
 - t. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standards: ASTM F 1120 and EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- 3. Type: Circular, corrugated bellows with external tie rods.
- 4. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig unless otherwise indicated.
- 5. Configuration: Single joint with base and double joint with base class(es) unless otherwise indicated.
- 6. Expansion Joints for Copper Tubing: Single- or multi-ply phosphor-bronze bellows, copper pipe ends, and brass shrouds.
 - a. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder joint.
 - b. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Solder joint.

- c. End Connections for Copper Tubing NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged.

C. Rubber Packless Expansion Joints:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.; a div. of Vibration Isolation Products of Texas, Inc.
 - b. Mason Industries, Inc.; Mercer Rubber Co.
 - c. Metraflex, Inc.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standards: ASTM F 1123 and FSA's "Technical Handbook: Non-Metallic Expansion Joints and Flexible Pipe Connectors."
3. Material: Fabric-reinforced rubber complying with FSA-NMEJ-703.
4. Arch Type: multiple arches with external control rods.
5. Spherical Type: multiple spheres with external control rods.
6. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 4: 150 psig at 220 deg F.
7. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 5 and NPS 6: 140 psig at 200 deg F.
8. Minimum Pressure Rating for NPS 8 to NPS 12: 140 psig at 180 deg F.
9. Material for Water: EPDM.
10. End Connections: Full-faced, integral steel flanges with steel retaining rings.

2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

A. Alignment Guides:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Adscro Manufacturing LLC.
 - b. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
 - c. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - d. Flexicraft Industries.
 - e. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 - f. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - g. Metraflex, Inc.
 - h. Senior Flexonics Pathway.
 - i. Unisource Manufacturing, Inc.
 - j. U.S. Bellows, Inc.
 - k. Pre-approved equal.
2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding spider for bolting to pipe.

B. Anchor Materials:

1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
 - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type-stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
 - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
 - b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPANSION-JOINT INSTALLATION

- A. Install expansion joints of sizes matching sizes of piping in which they are installed.
- B. Install metal-bellows expansion joints according to EJMA's "Standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc."
- C. Install rubber packless expansion joints according to FSA-NMEJ-702.

- D. Install grooved-joint expansion joints to grooved-end steel piping

3.2 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipe loops cold-sprung in tension or compression as required to partly absorb tension or compression produced during anticipated change in temperature.
- B. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings including tee in main.
- C. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in riser.
- D. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings including tee in main.

3.3 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install one or two guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Black-Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 42, riser clamp welded to anchor.
 - 3. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24, U-bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
 - 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 220516

SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
 - 2. Filled-system thermometers.
 - 3. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
 - 4. Light-activated thermometers.
 - 5. Thermowells.
 - 6. Dial-type pressure gages.
 - 7. Gage attachments.
 - 8. Test plugs.
 - 9. Test-plug kits.
 - 10. Sight flow indicators.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 21 Section "Facility Fire-Suppression Water-Service Piping" for fire-protection water-service meters outside the building.
 - 2. Division 21 fire-suppression piping Sections for fire-protection pressure gages.
 - 3. Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for domestic water meters and combined domestic and fire-protection water-service meters outside the building.
 - 4. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters inside the building.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - 2. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - 3. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - 4. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- C. Case: Liquid-filled and sealed type(s); stainless steel with 3-inch nominal diameter.
- D. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F.
- E. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- F. Connector Size: 1/2 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- G. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.

- H. Window: Plain glass or plastic.
- I. Ring: Stainless steel.
- J. Element: Bimetal coil.
- K. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- L. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.2 FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ashcroft Inc.
 - b. Marsh Bellofram.
 - c. Miljoco Corporation.
 - d. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - e. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - f. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - g. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - h. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 6-inch nominal diameter.
4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
5. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Ring: Stainless steel.
10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ashcroft Inc.
 - b. Miljoco Corporation.
 - c. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.
9. Ring: Metal or plastic.
10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

C. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Marsh Bellofram.
 - d. Miljoco Corporation.

- e. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - f. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - g. Terrice, H. O. Co.
 - h. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - i. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
 - j. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 3. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
 - 4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
 - 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 - 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
 - 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 - 8. Window: Glass.
 - 9. Ring: Stainless steel.
 - 10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, bottom; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 - 12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.
- D. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Miljoco Corporation.
 - d. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - e. Terrice, H. O. Co.
 - f. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 3. Case: Sealed type, plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
 - 4. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
 - 5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 - 6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
 - 7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 - 8. Window: Glass.
 - 9. Ring: Metal or plastic.
 - 10. Connector Type(s): Union joint, threaded, bottom; with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 11. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
 - 12. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.3 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:
- 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
 - 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
 - 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
 - 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES or CSA.
 - 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
 - 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
 - 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
 - 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 - 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
 - 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
 - 11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.
- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - b. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 3. Case: Liquid-filled, sealed, open-front, pressure relief, solid-front, pressure relief type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
 4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
 8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 9. Window: Glass.
 10. Ring: Brass or stainless steel.
 11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.
- B. Direct-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Flo Fab Inc.
 - d. Marsh Bellofram.
 - e. Miljoco Corporation.
 - f. Noshok.
 - g. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - h. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - i. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
 - j. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - k. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - l. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
 - m. Winters Instruments - U.S.
 - n. Pre-approved equal.
 2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 3. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
 4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
 8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 9. Window: Glass.
 10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.
- C. Remote-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Ernst Flow Industries.
 - d. Flo Fab Inc.
 - e. Marsh Bellofram.
 - f. Miljoco Corporation.
 - g. Noshok.
 - h. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - i. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - j. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
 - k. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - l. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - m. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - n. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
 - o. Winters Instruments - U.S.
 - p. Pre-approved equal.
 2. Standard: ASME B40.100.

3. Case: Liquid-filled, sealed type; cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Stainless steel.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

D. Remote-Mounted, Plastic-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Ashcroft Inc.
 - c. Miljoco Corporation.
 - d. Noshok.
 - e. Palmer Wahl Instrumentation Group.
 - f. REOTEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - g. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
 - h. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - i. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - j. WIKA Instrument Corporation - USA.
 - k. Winters Instruments - U.S.
 - l. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Sealed type; plastic; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter with back flange and holes for panel mounting.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston or porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.6 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Flow Design, Inc.
 2. Miljoco Corporation.
 3. National Meter, Inc.
 4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
 5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 6. Terice, H. O. Co.
 7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 9. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.7 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Flow Design, Inc.
 - 2. Miljoco Corporation.
 - 3. National Meter, Inc.
 - 4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
 - 5. Sisco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - 6. Terice, H. O. Co.
 - 7. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - 8. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - 9. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Furnish one test-plug kit containing two thermometers, one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.
- D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch-diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.
- E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch-diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

2.8 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Archon Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
 - 3. Emerson Process Management; Brooks Instrument.
 - 4. Ernst Co., John C., Inc.
 - 5. Ernst Flow Industries.
 - 6. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc. - USA; KOBOLD Messring GmbH.
 - 7. OPW Engineered Systems; a Dover company.
 - 8. Penberthy; A Brand of Tyco Valves & Controls - Prophetstown.
 - 9. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.
- C. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
- D. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- E. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F.
- F. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
- G. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches into fluid and one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- H. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- I. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- J. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- K. Install thermometers in the following locations:
 - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
 - 2. Inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger.
 - 3. Inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank.
 - 4. Inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller.
- L. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
 - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
 - 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Direct-mounted, metal- or plastic-case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each domestic water heat exchanger shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Direct-mounted, metal- or plastic-case, vapor-actuated type.
 - 3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic hot-water storage tank shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
 - 2. Direct-mounted, metal or plastic-case, vapor-actuated type.

3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

D. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each remote domestic water chiller shall be one of the following:

1. Sealed, bimetallic-actuated type.
2. Direct-mounted, metal or plastic-case, vapor-actuated type.
3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

E. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.

B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F.

3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be one of the following:

1. Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.
2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be one of the following:

1. Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.
2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be one of the following:

1. Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.
2. Sealed, direct-mounted, plastic case.
3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 160 psi.

B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 200 psi.

END OF SECTION 220519

SECTION 220523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bronze angle valves.
 - 2. Bronze ball valves.
 - 3. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
 - 4. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
 - 5. Bronze swing check valves.
 - 6. Iron swing check valves.
 - 7. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
 - 8. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
 - 9. Iron, center-guided check valves.
 - 10. Bronze gate valves.
 - 11. Bronze globe valves.
 - 12. Iron globe valves.
 - 13. Polypropylene valves.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 22 plumbing piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
 - 2. Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
 - 3. Division 33 water distribution piping Sections for general-duty and specialty valves for site construction piping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
 - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
 - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
 - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
 - 4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 10 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
 - 5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
 - 1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
 - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- F. Valve-End Connections:
 - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
 - 2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
 - 3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
 - 4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
 - c. Body Design: One piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
 - g. Stem: Bronze.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Reduced.

2.4 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - f. DeZurik Water Controls.
 - g. Flo Fab Inc.
 - h. Hammond Valve.
 - i. Kitz Corporation.
 - j. Legend Valve.
 - k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - l. NIBCO INC.
 - m. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
 - n. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - o. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
 - p. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

2.5 IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - c. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
 - d. Victaulic Company.
- 2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
- c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
- d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
- e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
- f. Seal: EPDM.

2.6 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Kitz Corporation.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

2.7 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Trim: Composition.
 - g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
 - h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
 - i. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
 - j. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.8 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

- A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. NIBCO INC.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

2.9 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
 - c. Crispin Valve.
 - d. DFT Inc.
 - e. GA Industries, Inc.
 - f. Hammond Valve.
 - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - h. NIBCO INC.
 - i. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
 - j. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
 - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Seat: EPDM.

2.10 BRONZE GATE VALVES

- A. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - e. Hammond Valve.
 - f. Kitz Corporation.
 - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - h. NIBCO INC.
 - i. Powell Valves.
 - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.11 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.12 IRON GLOBE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Kitz Corporation.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Powell Valves.
 - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, or gate valves.
 - 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
 - 3. Throttling Service: Globe, ball, or butterfly valves.
 - 4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, resilient-seat check valves.
 - c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
 - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
 - 7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 - 1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends. Solder joint ball valves allowed up to NPS 3.
 - 2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
 - 3. Ball Valves: One piece, reduced port, bronze with bronze trim.
 - 4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
 - 5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, RS.
 - 6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 - 1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 - 2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
 - 3. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 CWP.
 - 4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
 - 5. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
 - 6. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
 - 7. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, resilient seat.
 - 8. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

END OF SECTION 220523

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following hangers and supports for plumbing system piping and equipment:
 - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
 - 4. Metal framing systems.
 - 5. Fiberglass strut systems.
 - 6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
 - 7. Fastener systems.
 - 8. Pipe stands.
 - 9. Pipe positioning systems.
 - 10. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
 - 2. Division 21 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for pipe hangers for fire-suppression piping.
 - 3. Division 22 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
 - 4. Division 22 Section "Vibration for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society for The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.
- B. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
- B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
 - 3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
 - 4. Powder-actuated fastener systems.
 - 5. Pipe positioning systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers. Include Product Data for components.
 - 2. Metal framing systems. Include Product Data for components.
 - 3. Fiberglass strut systems. Include Product Data for components.
 - 4. Pipe stands. Include Product Data for components.
 - 5. Equipment supports.

- C. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code—Steel;" AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel;" and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
 - 3. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
 - 4. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AAA Technology & Specialties Co., Inc.
 - 2. Bergen-Power Pipe Supports.
 - 3. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - 4. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
 - 5. Empire Industries, Inc.
 - 6. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
 - 7. Globe Pipe Hanger Products, Inc.
 - 8. Grinnell Corp.
 - 9. GS Metals Corp.
 - 10. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
 - 11. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
 - 12. PHS Industries, Inc.
 - 13. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
 - 14. Tolco Inc.
 - 15. Pre-approved equal.
- C. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
- D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
- E. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.

2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; ERISTRUT Div.
3. GS Metals Corp.
4. Power-Strut Div.; Tyco International, Ltd.
5. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
6. Tolco Inc.
7. Unistrut Corp.; Tyco International, Ltd.
8. Pre-approved equal.

C. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.

D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Description: 100-psig-minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
3. PHS Industries, Inc.
4. Pipe Shields, Inc.
5. Rilco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
6. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
7. Pre-approved equal.

C. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with vapor barrier.

D. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass.

E. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

F. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

G. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type zinc-coated or stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
 - c. Hilti, Inc.
 - d. ITW Ramset/Red Head.
 - e. MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - f. Powers Fasteners.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.

2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-steel shapes.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.

2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 24, if little or no insulation is required.
 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
 10. Split Pipe-Ring with or without Turnbuckle-Adjustment Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 11. Extension Hinged or 2-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 16. Adjustable, Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36, if vertical adjustment is required, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 17. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 20, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 24, if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 30, if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- J. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- K. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:

- a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- O. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounting Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- F. Pipe Positioning System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture. Refer to Division 22 Section "Plumbing Fixtures" for plumbing fixtures.
- G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

- M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.
- N. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
 - 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood inserts.
 - 6. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.
 - 7. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touch Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touch Up: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Stencils.
 - 5. Valve tags.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch; stainless steel, 0.025-inch; aluminum, 0.032-inch; or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 - 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 - 5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Letter Color: White.
 - 3. Background Color: Black.
 - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

- 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (.
 - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 - 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 - 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
 - D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.4 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch; stainless steel, 0.025-inch; aluminum, 0.032-inch; or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.

- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.
 - 2. Provide framed ready-to-hang water valve shut-off location directory.

2.5 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire or reinforced grommet and wire or string.
 - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: 2 inches, round.
 - b. Hot Water: 2 inches, round.
 - 2. Valve-Tag Color:
 - a. Cold Water: Natural or green.
 - b. Hot Water: Natural or green.
 - 3. Letter Color:
 - a. Cold Water: Black or white.
 - b. Hot Water: Black or white.

3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties.
 - 3. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
 - 4. Detail application of field-applied jackets and fitting covers.
- C. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that product complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.6 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on piping segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Plumbing Piping Insulation Schedule" for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
 - b. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
 - c. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL.
- D. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
 - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
 - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-50 AHV2.

- b. Foster Brand; 30-36.
 - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
- 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
- 5. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:

- 1. Joint Sealants for Flexible Elastomeric Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-76.
 - b. Foster Brand; 30-45.
 - c. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
- 5. Color: White or gray.
- 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

- 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
- 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
- 4. Color: White.
- 5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

- 1. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
- 3. Color: White.
- 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

2.8 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI; 428 AWF ASJ.

- b. Avery Dennison Corporation; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Width: 3 inches.
- 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
- 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
- 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
- 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI; 370 White PVC tape.
 - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
 - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Width: 2 inches.
- 3. Thickness: 6 mils.
- 4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
- 5. Elongation: 500 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

2.9 SECUREMENTS

- A. Staples for Hot Service Only: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

2.10 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
 - b. Plumberex.
 - c. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot-water supply and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, no penetrations of the insulation shall occur at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections. Seal joints and seams with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
 - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 - 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 - 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 - 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 - 8. For services, except for flexible elastomeric, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 - 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
 - 1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or

- union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Finish exposed surfaces with a PVC jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
 2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
 2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
 3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 220719

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Under-building slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
 - 2. Encasement for piping.
 - 3. Specialty valves.
 - 4. Flexible connectors.
 - 5. Escutcheons.
 - 6. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
 - 7. Wall penetration systems.
- B. Related Section:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping and water meters outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.
- C. Reference Documents:
 - 1. ASTM F 2389-06 - Standard Specification for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems.
 - 2. CSA B137.11 - Polypropylene (PP-R) Pipe and Fittings for Pressure Applications.
 - 3. NSF/ANSI 14 – Plastic Piping System Components and Related Materials.
 - 4. NSF/ANSI 61 – Drinking Water Systems Components – Health Effects.
- D. Definitions:
 - 1. Definitions shall be in accordance with local plumbing codes and ASTM F 2389.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following products:
 - 1. Specialty valves.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Flexible connectors.
 - 5. Backflow preventers and vacuum breakers.
 - 6. Escutcheons.
 - 7. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
 - 8. Water penetration systems.
 - 9. Piping.
- B. Water Samples: Specified in "Cleaning" Article.
- C. Coordination Drawings: For piping in equipment rooms and other congested areas, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Fire-suppression-water piping.
 - 2. Domestic water piping.
 - 3. Compressed air piping.
 - 4. HVAC hydronic piping.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

- B. Comply with NSF 61 for potable domestic water piping and components.
- C. Material shall be certified by NSF International as complying with NSF 14, NSF 61, and ASTM F 2389 or CSA B137.11.
- D. Material shall comply with manufacturers specifications.
- E. Special Engineered products shall be certified by NSF International as complying with NSF 14.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, or Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of water service without Architect's, Construction Manager's, or Owner's written permission.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
 1. Cast-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
 2. Wrought-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
 3. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
 4. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
 5. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Elkhart Products Corporation; Industrial Division.
 - 2) NIBCO INC.
 - 3) Viega; Plumbing and Heating Systems.
 - 4) Pre-approved equal.
 - b. NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
 - c. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.
 6. Copper-Tube Extruded-Tee Connections:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) T-DRILL Industries Inc.
 - 2) Pre-approved equal.
 - b. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.
 7. Grooved-Joint Copper-Tube Appurtenances:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Anvil International.
 - 2) Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - 3) Victaulic Company.
 - 4) Pre-approved equal.
 - b. Copper Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM B 75 copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
 - c. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, annealed temper.

1. Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 1. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
 2. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
 - a. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 1. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
 - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
 2. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
 - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free, unless otherwise indicated; full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness or high-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- D. Color: Black or natural.

2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for general-duty metal valves.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves, drain valves, backflow preventers, and vacuum breakers.

2.7 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
 - b. Dresser, Inc.; Dresser Piping Specialties.

- c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
- d. JCM Industries.
- e. Romac Industries, Inc.
- f. Smith-Blair, Inc; a Sensus company.
- g. Viking Johnson; c/o Mueller Co.
- h. Pre-approved equal.

2.8 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. EPCO Sales, Inc.
 - d. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 180 deg F.
 - b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. EPCO Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- D. Dielectric-Flange Kits:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Couplings:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corporation.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Galvanized-steel coupling.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - c. End Connections: Female threaded.
 - d. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic.
- F. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
2. Description:
 - a. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - c. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 - d. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 2. Flexicraft Industries.
 3. Flex Pression, Ltd.
 4. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 5. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 6. Mercer Rubber Co.
 7. Metraflex, Inc.
 8. Proco Products, Inc.
 9. Tozen Corporation.
 10. Unaflex, Inc.
 11. Universal Metal Hose; a Hyspan company.
 12. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 2. End Connections NPS 2) and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

2.10 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. General: Manufactured ceiling, floor, and wall escutcheons and floor plates.
- B. One Piece, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated finish with setscrews.
- C. One Piece, Deep Pattern: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish.
- D. One Piece, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with setscrew.
- E. Split Casting, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- F. Split Plate, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge, setscrew.
- G. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- H. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

2.11 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Fabricated of cast iron, and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

- C. Molded-PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- F. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc-coated, with plain ends.
- G. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.12 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Calpico, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex, Inc.
 - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 5. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, used to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel or stainless steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, or stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.13 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages and Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for drain valves and strainers.

- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for pressure-reducing valves.
- H. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- J. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- K. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- L. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- M. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
- N. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- O. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- P. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- Q. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- R. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- S. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping from each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
- T. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps" for thermostats.
- U. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" Chapter.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- F. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2104. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- G. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll groove end of tube. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for roll-grooved joints.

- H. Ductile-Iron-Piping Grooved Joints: Cut groove end of pipe. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join ductile-iron pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe, cut-grooved joints.
- I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- J. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for valve installations.
- B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping. Drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
 - 1. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
 - 2. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: Instead of hose-end drain valves where indicated.
- D. Install balancing valve in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller and butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves.
- E. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for calibrated balancing valves.

3.5 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 - 2. NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

3.6 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.7 FLEXIBLE CONNECTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible connectors in suction and discharge piping connections to each domestic water pump and in suction and discharge manifold connections to each domestic water booster pump.
- B. Install bronze-hose flexible connectors in copper domestic water tubing.

3.8 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support products and installation.
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.

2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet If Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

F. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 2 and Smaller: 32 inches with 3/8-inch rod.

G. Install hangers for vertical PEX piping every 48 inches

H. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.9 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:

1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Comply with requirements in Division 22 plumbing fixture Sections for connection sizes.
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.10 ESCUTCHEON INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

B. Escutcheons for New Piping:

1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
2. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
3. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece or split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
4. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
5. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass.

6. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.

3.11 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. General Requirements: Install sleeves for pipes and tubes passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- D. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install sleeves in new partitions, slabs, and walls as they are built.
- F. For interior wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.
- G. For exterior wall penetrations above grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.
- H. For exterior wall penetrations below grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using sleeve seals specified in this Section.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves in concrete slabs and walls with grout.
- J. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Install sleeve materials according to the following applications:
 - 1. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs: Molded PE, molded PVC, or steel pipe.
 - 2. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs of Mechanical Equipment Areas or Other Wet Areas: Steel pipe or stack sleeve fittings.
 - a. Extend sleeves 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - b. For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing, extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - 3. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Roof Slabs: Molded PE, molded PVC, or steel pipe.
 - 4. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Exterior Concrete Walls:
 - a. Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Cast-iron wall pipe sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
 - c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation when sleeve seals are used.
 - d. Do not use sleeves when wall penetration systems are used.
 - 5. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Interior Concrete Walls:
 - a. Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
- L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestop materials and installations.

3.12 SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve seals in sleeves in exterior concrete walls at water-service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble sleeve seal components and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.13 WALL PENETRATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall penetration systems in new, exterior concrete walls.
- B. Assemble wall penetration system components with sleeve pipe. Install so that end of sleeve pipe and face of housing are flush with wall. Adjust locking devices to secure sleeve pipe in housing.

3.14 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification materials and installation.
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Piping Inspections:
 - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 - 3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 - 4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Piping Tests:
 - 1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
 - 2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 6. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- D. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.16 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
 - 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide flow of hot water in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
 - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.

7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.17 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable and non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.18 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K or ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 and larger, shall be one of the following:
 1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
 2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
- F. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
- G. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.

- H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
 - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; grooved-joint copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.

3.19 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated memory-stop balancing valves.
 - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:
 - 1. Vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Backflow preventers.
 - 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
 - 4. Balancing valves.
 - 5. Temperature-actuated water mixing valves.
 - 6. Strainers.
 - 7. Outlet boxes.
 - 8. Hose bibbs.
 - 9. Wall hydrants.
 - 10. Drain valves.
 - 11. Water hammer arresters.
 - 12. Air vents.
 - 13. Trap-seal primer valves.
 - 14. Trap-seal primer systems.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
 - 2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
 - 3. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Filtration Equipment" for water filters in domestic water piping.
 - 4. Division 22 Section "Healthcare Plumbing Fixtures" for thermostatic mixing valves for sitz baths, thermostatic mixing-valve assemblies for hydrotherapy equipment, and outlet boxes for dialysis equipment.
 - 5. Division 22 Section "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for water tempering equipment.
 - 6. Division 22 Section "Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig, unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. NSF Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components.
 - 2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - e. Rain Bird Corporation.
 - f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - i. Pre-approved equal.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
 3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
 4. Body: Bronze.
 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
 6. Finish: Rough bronze or chrome plated where in public view.
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. Legend Valve.
 - e. MIFAB, Inc.
 - f. Prier Products, Inc.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - k. Pre-approved equal.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
 3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
 4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
 5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated or rough bronze where in public view.
- C. Pressure Vacuum Breakers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - h. Pre-approved equal.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1020.
 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
 5. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.
- D. Laboratory-Faucet Vacuum Breakers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 2. Standard: ASSE 1035.
 3. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8 matching faucet size.

4. Body: Bronze.
5. End Connections: Threaded.
6. Finish: Chrome plated.

E. Spill-Resistant Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1056.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1012.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. End Connections: Union, solder joint.
6. Finish: Rough bronze.

B. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through; vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet; or vertical where space constraints require, flow.
8. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

C. Double-Check Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1015.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
8. Accessories:

- a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Beverage-Dispensing-Equipment Backflow Preventers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1022.
 - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 4. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
 - 5. Body: Stainless steel.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded.
- E. Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1024.
 - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 4. Body: Bronze with union inlet.
- F. Carbonated-Beverage-Dispenser, Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cash Acme.
 - b. Lancer Corporation.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1032.
 - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 4. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
 - 5. Body: Stainless steel.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded.
- G. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1048 and FMG approved or UL listed.
 - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
 - 5. Body: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved.
 - 6. End Connections: Flanged.
 - 7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through; vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet; or vertical flow where space constraints require.
 - 8. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
- H. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1052.

3. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
4. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
5. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.

I. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Flomatic Corporation.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - f. Pre-approved equal.
2. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.3 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div. for 4" valves and larger, no exceptions allowed.
 - b. Wilkins, Cla-Val, Febco, or Conbraco for valves smaller than 4", no other manufacturer's allowed.
2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
4. Body: Bronze with chrome-plated finish for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
5. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

B. Water Control Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CLA-VAL Automatic Control Valves.
 - b. Flomatic Corporation.
 - c. OCV Control Valves.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Ames Fluid Control Systems.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Watts ACV.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
2. Description: Pilot-operation, diaphragm-type, single-seated main water control valve.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig minimum with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating. Include small pilot-control valve, restrictor device, specialty fittings, and sensor piping.
4. Main Valve Body: Cast- or ductile-iron body with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating; or stainless-steel body.
 - a. Pattern: Angle- or globe-valve design.
 - b. Trim: Stainless steel.
5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

2.4 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. TAC Americas.
 - e. Taco, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
2. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory setting indicator.
3. Body: Brass or bronze.
4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

B. Cast-Iron Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Flo Fab Inc.
 - c. ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 - e. TAC Americas.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
2. Type: Adjustable with Y-pattern globe valve, two readout ports, and memory-setting indicator.
3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not smaller than NPS 2-1/2.

C. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

D. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
 - e. Hammond Valve.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Red-White Valve Corp.
 - i. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
4. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
5. Body: Copper alloy.
6. Port: Standard or full port.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

2.5 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
 - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.020 inch.
 - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.045 inch.
 - c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.10 inch.
6. Drain: Pipe plug.

2.6 OUTLET BOXES

A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. IPS Corporation.
 - d. LSP Products Group, Inc.
 - e. Oatey.
 - f. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
 - g. Symmons Industries, Inc.
 - h. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - i. Whitehall Manufacturing; a div. of Acorn Engineering Company.
 - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - k. Pre-approved equal.
2. Mounting: Recessed.

3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel box and faceplate.
4. Faucet: Combination, valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water, valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
5. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
6. Drain: NPS 2 standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
7. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch-long, rubber household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
8. Drain Hose: One 48-inch-long, rubber household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

B. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. IPS Corporation.
 - d. LSP Products Group, Inc.
 - e. Oatey.
 - f. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
2. Mounting: Recessed.
3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel box and faceplate.
4. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
5. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

2.7 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze or chrome or nickel plated.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
12. Operation for Service Areas: Operating key.
13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

2.8 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Prier Products, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - j. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounting with cover.

9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
11. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
12. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

B. Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
 - b. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
 - c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Prier Products, Inc.
 - e. Smith, Jay. R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - i. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1019, Type A or Type B.
3. Type: Freeze-resistant, automatic draining with integral air-inlet valve.
4. Classification: Type A, for automatic draining with hose removed or Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.
5. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
6. Operation: Loose key.
7. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
8. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
9. Outlet: Exposed with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

2.9 POST HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze, Draining-Type Post Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. MIFAB, Inc.
 - b. Prier Products, Inc.
 - c. Simmons Manufacturing Co.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - j. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M.
3. Type: Nonfreeze, exposed-outlet post hydrant.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of at least length required for burial of valve below frost line.
6. Casing: Bronze with casing guard.
7. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
8. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
9. Drain: Designed with hole to drain into ground when shut off.
10. Vacuum Breaker: Nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011; and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.
11. Operating Key(s): Two with each loose-key-operation wall hydrant.

2.10 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.

9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

2.11 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. PPP Inc.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - h. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - j. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Metal bellows or copper tube with piston.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.12 AIR VENTS

A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Pressure Rating: 125-psig minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

B. Welded-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Stainless steel.
2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig minimum pressure rating.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
 4. Install backflow preventer between 12" above floor and 60" above floor so it is easily accessible without the use of a ladder.
- C. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install water control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with globe valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

- E. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- F. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
 - 1. Install thermometers and water regulators if specified.
 - 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- G. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.
- H. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking wall reinforcement between studs. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
- I. Install hose stations with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with thermometer on outlet.
 - 1. Install shutoff valve on outlet if specified.
 - 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking wall reinforcement between studs. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
- J. Install ground hydrants with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set ground hydrants with box flush with grade.
- K. Install draining-type post hydrants with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set post hydrants in concrete paving or in 1 cu. ft. of concrete block at grade.
- L. Install nonfreeze, nondraining-type post hydrants set in concrete or pavement.
- M. Install freeze-resistant yard hydrants with riser pipe set in concrete or pavement. Do not encase canister in concrete.
- N. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- O. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
 - 3. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
 - 4. Double-check backflow-prevention assemblies.
 - 5. Carbonated-beverage-machine backflow preventers.
 - 6. Dual-check-valve backflow preventers.
 - 7. Reduced-pressure-detector, fire-protection backflow-preventer assemblies.
 - 8. Double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventers.
 - 9. Water pressure-reducing valves.
 - 10. Calibrated balancing valves.
 - 11. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
 - 12. Manifold, thermostatic, water-mixing-valve assemblies.
 - 13. Photographic-process, thermostatic, water-mixing-valve assemblies.
 - 14. Primary water tempering valves.
 - 15. Outlet boxes.
 - 16. Hose stations.

- 17. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
- 18. Trap-seal primer systems.

- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119

SECTION 221123 - DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED, IN-LINE, CLOSE-COUPLED CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
 - 2. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
 - 3. PACO Pumps; Grundfos Pumps Corporation, U.S.A.
 - 4. Grundfos
 - 5. Wilo
 - 6. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, single-stage, close-coupled, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps designed for installation with pump and motor shaft mounted horizontal.

- C. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Radially split with threaded companion-flange connections for pumps with NPS 2 pipe connections and flanged connections for pumps with NPS 2-1/2 pipe connections.
 - 2. Impeller: Statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
 - 3. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft with deflector, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 - 4. Seal: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and rubber bellows and gasket.
 - 5. Bearings: Oil-lubricated; bronze-journal or ball type.
 - 6. Shaft Coupling: Flexible, capable of absorbing torsional vibration and shaft misalignment.
- D. Motor: Single speed, with grease-lubricated ball bearings; and resiliently or rigidly mounted to pump casing.
- E. Characteristics:
 - 1. Casing Material: Bronze or cast iron.
 - 2. Impeller Material: ASTM B 584, cast bronze or stainless steel.
 - 3. Minimum Working Pressure: 175 psig.
 - 4. Maximum Continuous Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.
 - 5. Pump Control: Thermostat.

2.2 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.

2.3 CONTROLS

- A. Refer to drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps with shaft(s) horizontal.
- D. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers or spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of size required to support pump weight.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- E. Install thermostats in hot-water return piping.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.

- C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
 - 1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
 - a. Horizontally mounted, in-line, close-coupled centrifugal pumps.
 - b. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."
 - 2. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
 - 3. Install pressure gage and snubber at suction of each pump and pressure gage and snubber at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gage tapings where provided or install pressure-gage connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gages and snubbers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Comply with Division 26 Sections for electrical connections, and wiring methods.
- E. Connect thermostats to pumps that they control.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 - 4. Set thermostats for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
 - 5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 - 6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 7. Start motor.
 - 8. Open discharge valve slowly.
 - 9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.
 - 10. Adjust timer settings.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust domestic water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 221123

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following for soil, waste, and vent piping inside the building:
 - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
 - 2. Special pipe fittings.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Sanitary Sewerage Pumps."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.
- D. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. TPE: Thermoplastic elastomer.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.
 - 2. Sanitary Sewer, Force-Main Piping: 150 psig.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Sovent Drainage System: Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
- C. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute and shall be listed by NSF International.
- C. CISPI Hubless Couplings (CISPI 310) shall be marked with NSF International.

- D. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping; "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping; "NSF-tubular" for plastic continuous waste piping; and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class; manufactured by AB&I, Charlotte, or Tyler.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.4 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301. manufactured by AB&I, Charlotte, or Tyler.
- B. Sovent Stack Fittings: ASME B16.45 or ASSE 1043, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.
- C. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
 - 1. Standard, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) ANACO.
 - 2) Mission Rubber Co.
 - 3) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
 - 4) Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) ANACO/Husky SD 4000.
 - 2) Clamp-All Corp.-125.
 - 3) Pre-approved equal.
 - 3. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Cast-Iron Couplings: ASTM A 48/A 48M, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) MG Piping Products Co.
 - 2) Pre-approved equal.

2.5 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade A or B, Standard Weight or Schedule 40, galvanized. Include ends matching joining method.
- B. Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, galvanized, threaded, cast-iron drainage pattern.
- C. Pressure Fittings:
 - 1. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, galvanized, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.

2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
3. Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, galvanized, standard pattern.
4. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
5. Cast-Iron, Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Class 125, galvanized.

D. Grooved-Joint Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International.
 - b. Star Pipe Products; Star Fittings Div.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
 - d. Ward Manufacturing, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
2. Grooved-End, Steel-Piping Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, galvanized, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106, galvanized-steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, galvanized, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
3. Grooved-End, Steel-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.

2.6 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.

1. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.

B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, drawn temper.

1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
2. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
3. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

2.7 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.

1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, socket type, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.

B. Solvent Cement and Adhesive Primer:

1. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.8 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

A. Flexible, Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring, ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco, Inc.
 - c. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
 - d. Mission Rubber Co.
 - e. NDS, Inc.
 - f. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
2. Sleeve Materials:
 - a. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - b. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 - c. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

B. Expansion Joints: Two or three-piece, ductile-iron assembly consisting of telescoping sleeve(s) with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Select and

assemble components for expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
 - b. Romac Industries, Inc.
 - c. Star Pipe Products; Star Fittings Div.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.

- C. Wall-Penetration Fittings: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and flexing sections for up to 20-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. SIGMA Corp.
 - b. Pre-approved equal.

2.9 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Description: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105, high-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch or LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Color: Black or natural.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXCAVATION

- A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping shall be the following:
 1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
- C. Aboveground, vent piping shall be the following:
 1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
- D. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 15 and smaller shall be the following:
 1. Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, nonpressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- E. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 shall be any of the following:
 1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
 2. Steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
- F. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 shall be any of the following:
 1. Steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
 2. Grooved-end steel pipe, grooved-joint system fittings and couplings, and grooved joints.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Sanitary sewer piping outside the building is specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Sanitary Sewers."
- B. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

- C. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers.
- D. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary force-main piping.
- E. Install underground, steel, force-main piping. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- F. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600. Install buried piping inside the building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to sanitary sewer piping outside the building with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
 - 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- G. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
 - 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- H. Install underground, ductile-iron, special pipe fittings according to AWWA C600.
 - 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- I. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- J. Install wall-penetration fitting at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight.
- K. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- L. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- M. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- N. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- O. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:
 - 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Solvent Drainage System: Comply with ASSE 1043 and solvent fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- P. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- Q. Install ABS soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2661.
- R. Install PVC soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- S. Install underground ABS and PVC soil and waste drainage piping according to ASTM D 2321.

- T. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- C. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
- D. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
- E. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Grooved Joints: Assemble joint with keyed coupling, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. PVC Nonpressure Piping Joints: Join piping according to ASTM D 2665.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
 - 1. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
 - 2. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to sewage backflow.
 - 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves, unless drain has integral backwater valve.
 - 3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
 - 4. Backwater valve are specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 2. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs according to the following:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet, if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.

F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.

H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.

I. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 2: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 96 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
4. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.

J. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 10 feet.

K. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
4. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

L. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

M. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:

1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
4. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve, if indicated, and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

D. Connect force-main piping to the following:

1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main or sanitary manhole.
2. Sewage Pumps: To sewage pump discharge.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - 3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221316

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following sanitary drainage piping specialties:
 - 1. Backwater valves.
 - 2. Cleanouts.
 - 3. Floor drains.
 - 4. Trench drains.
 - 5. Channel drainage systems.
 - 6. Roof flashing assemblies.
 - 7. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
 - 8. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
 - 9. Flashing materials.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for trench drains for storm water, channel drainage systems for storm water, roof drains, and catch basins.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.
- C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- D. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for the following:
 - 1. Grease interceptors.
 - 2. Grease removal devices.
 - 3. Oil interceptors.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for frost-resistant vent terminals.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BACKWATER VALVES

- A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
 - 3. Size: Same as connected piping.
 - 4. Body: Cast iron.
 - 5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
 - 6. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
 - 7. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed or open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
 - 8. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.
- B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
 - 3. Body: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
 - 4. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
 - 5. Inlet: Threaded.
 - 6. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.
- C. Horizontal, Plastic Backwater Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Canplas LLC.
 - b. IPS Corporation.
 - c. NDS Inc.
 - d. Oatey.
 - e. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
 - f. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.

- h. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 3. Body: ABS or PVC.
- 4. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
- 5. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
- 6. End Connections: Socket type.

2.2 CLEANOUTS

A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
- 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
- 4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
- 5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head plug.
- 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- 7. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.

B. Metal Floor Cleanouts:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. Oatey.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - h. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - i. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - j. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule; heavy-duty, adjustable housing; or threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
- 3. Size: Same as connected branch.
- 4. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
- 5. Outlet Connection: Threaded
- 6. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket; or brass plug with tapered threads.
- 7. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads, set-screws or other device.
- 8. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
- 9. Frame and Cover Shape: Round or square in tiled areas.
- 10. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy in Service, Equipment and Warehouse Areas or Medium Duty.
- 11. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy in Service, Equipment and Warehouse Areas or Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
- 12. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
- 13. Size: Same as connected branch.
- 14. Housing: Stainless steel.
- 15. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
- 16. Riser: Stainless-steel drainage pipe fitting to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.

3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head; drilled-and-threaded, brass, or cast-iron plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with countersunk screw.

2.3 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Prier Products, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - h. Pre-approved equal.
2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.4 TRENCH DRAINS

A. Trench Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3 for trench drains.
3. Material: Ductile or gray iron.
4. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.5 CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Stainless-Steel Channel Drainage Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Blucher-Josam Div.
 - b. MultiDrain Systems.
 - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Flo-Thru Operation.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
2. Type: Modular system of stainless-steel channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.3.1, for trench drains.
 - b. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, stainless-steel with level invert.
 - 1) Dimensions: 5.8 inches wide. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
 - c. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy or medium duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channels.
 - 1) Material: Stainless steel
 - 2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
 - d. Covers: Solid stainless steel, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channels, and of lengths indicated.
 - e. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
 - f. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
3. See Schedule on Drawings.

B. Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ACO Polymer Products, Inc.
 - b. Josam Company; Mea-Josam Div.

- c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Type: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
 - a. Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, sloped-invert, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.6 percent and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated. Include extension sections necessary for required depth.
 - 1) Dimensions: 4-inch inside width. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
 - 2) Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grates.
 - b. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
 - 1) Material: Ductile iron
 - 2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
 - c. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
 - d. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
 - e. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
 - f. Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, precast, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with level invert and with NPS 4 outlets in number and locations indicated.
 - 1) Dimensions: 5-inch inside width and 9-3/4 inches deep. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
 - 2) Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grates.
 - 3. See Schedule on Drawings.
- C. Polymer-Concrete Sediment Interceptor:
- 1. Description: 27-inch-square, precast, polymer-concrete body, with outlets in number and sizes indicated. Include 24-inch-square, gray-iron slotted grate.
 - 2. Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grate.
- D. FRP Channel Drainage Systems:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ACO Polymer Products, Inc.
 - b. Aquaduct, Inc.; an ACO Polymer Products, Inc. Company.
 - c. Josam Company; Mea-Josam Div.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Flo-Thru Operation.
 - f. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
 - a. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, sloped-invert, FRP modular units, with end caps. Include flat, rounded, or inclined inside bottom, with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated.
 - 1) Dimensions: 4 or 6 inches wide. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
 - 2) Frame: Manufacturer's standard metal for grates.
 - b. Grates: With slots or perforations and widths and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
 - 1) Material: Fiberglass, galvanized steel, or gray iron.
 - 2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
 - c. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
 - d. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
 - e. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
 - f. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.6 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

- A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company; Elmdor/Stoneman Div.
 - b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch-thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 8 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.

1. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
2. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
3. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

2.7 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ProSet Systems Inc.
 - b. Hilti, Inc.
 - c. 3M, Inc.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
2. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
3. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
4. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open Drains:

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.

B. Deep-Seal Traps:

1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
 - a. NPS 2: 4-inch-minimum water seal.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch-minimum water seal.

C. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

D. Sleeve Flashing Device:

1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 2 inches above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

E. Stack Flashing Fittings:

1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

2.9 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:

1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness.
2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0469-inch thickness.
3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness.

- B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft.
 - 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft.
- C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- D. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.
- E. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- F. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- H. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.
- C. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- D. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- E. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- F. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
 - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
 - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
 - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
 - c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
 - 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 - 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Assemble and install ASME A112.3.1, stainless-steel channel drainage systems according to ASME A112.3.1. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with surface.

- I. Assemble non-ASME A112.3.1, stainless-steel channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- J. Assemble FRP channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- K. Assemble plastic channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- L. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- M. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- N. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors and stacks at floor penetrations.
- O. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 2 inches above floor.
- P. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- Q. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- R. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- S. Install grease interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.
 - 1. Above-Floor Installation: Set unit with bottom resting on floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Flush with Floor Installation: Set unit and extension, if required, with cover flush with finished floor.
 - 3. Recessed Floor Installation: Set unit in receiver housing having bottom or cradle supports, with receiver housing cover flush with finished floor.
 - 4. Install cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors not having integral cleanout on outlet.
- T. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- U. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.
- V. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Grease Interceptors: Connect inlet and outlet to unit, and connect flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping. Install valve on outlet of automatic drawoff-type unit.
- D. Oil Interceptors: Connect inlet, outlet, vent, and gravity drawoff piping to unit; flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping; and gravity drawoff and suction piping to oil storage tank.
- E. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- F. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
 - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.

2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.

- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
 - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
 - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
 - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.
- G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Commercial, light-duty, storage, electric, domestic-water heaters.
 - 2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Commercial, light-duty, storage, electric, domestic-water heaters.
 - 2. Domestic-water heater accessories.
- B. Product Data Submittals: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Equipment room drawing or BIM model, drawn to scale, on which the items described in this Section are shown and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Commercial, Light-Duty, Storage, Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1) Storage Tank: Three years.
 - 2) Controls and Other Components: Two years.
 - b. Expansion Tanks: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- C. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

2.2 COMMERCIAL, ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Commercial, Light-Duty, Storage, Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. Bradford White Corporation.
 - c. Lochinvar, LLC.
 - d. State Industries.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water heaters from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Standard: UL 174.
 - 4. Storage-Tank Construction: Steel, vertical arrangement.
 - a. Tappings: ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
 - 5. Factory-Installed, Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
 - c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal with hose-end connection.
 - d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
 - e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish or high-impact composite material.
 - f. Heat-Trap Fittings: Inlet type in cold-water inlet and outlet type in hot-water outlet.
 - g. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in immersion type.
 - h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - i. Safety Control: High-temperature-limit cutoff device or system.
 - j. Relief Valve: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than working-pressure rating of domestic-water heater. Select relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
- B. Capacity and Characteristics:
 - a. Refer to schedule on drawings.

2.3 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Domestic-Water Expansion Tanks:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - b. AMTROL, Inc.
 - c. Taco Comfort Solutions.
 - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain domestic-water expansion tanks from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 3. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
 - 4. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
 - 5. Capacity and Characteristics:
 - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 100 psig.

b. Capacity Acceptable: 2 gal. minimum.

- B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
- C. Shock Absorbers: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, Size A water hammer arrester.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Hydrostatically test commercial domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.
- C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Exception: Omit concrete bases for commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters if installation on stand, bracket, suspended platform, or directly on floor is indicated.
 - 2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
 - 3. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
 - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 6. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 7. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 8. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
 - 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- C. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend domestic-water heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- D. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend domestic-water heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- E. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install thermometers on outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

- G. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping of residential, solar, electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- H. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.
- I. Charge domestic-water expansion tanks with air to required system pressure.
- J. Install dielectric fittings in all locations where piping of dissimilar metals is to be joined. The wetted surface of the dielectric fitting contacted by potable water to contain less than 0.25 percent of lead by weight.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters. Training to be a minimum of one hour(s).

END OF SECTION 223300

SECTION 224000 - PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following conventional plumbing fixtures and related components:
 - 1. Faucets for lavatories, bathtubs, bathtub/showers, showers and sinks.
 - 2. Fittings for bathtubs, bathtub/showers and showers.
 - 3. Flushometers.
 - 4. Toilet seats.
 - 5. Protective shielding guards.
 - 6. Fixture supports.
 - 7. Interceptors.
 - 8. Shower receptors.
 - 9. Disposers.
 - 10. Water closets.
 - 11. Urinals.
 - 12. Lavatories.
 - 13. Commercial sinks.
 - 14. Bathtubs.
 - 15. Individual shower enclosures.
 - 16. Group showers.
 - 17. Kitchen sinks.
 - 18. Service sinks and Janitor's sinks.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 10 Section "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories."
 - 2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers, floor drains, and specialty fixtures not included in this Section.
 - 3. Division 22 Section "Drinking Fountains/Water Coolers."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- C. Cast Polymer: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material. This material includes cultured-marble and solid-surface materials.
- D. Cultured Marble: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material with surface coating.
- E. Fitting: Device that controls the flow of water into or out of the plumbing fixture. Fittings specified in this Section include supplies and stops, faucets and spouts, shower heads and tub spouts, drains and tailpieces, and traps and waste pipes. Piping and general-duty valves are included where indicated.
- F. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- G. PMMA: Polymethyl methacrylate (acrylic) plastic.
- H. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- I. Solid Surface: Nonporous, homogeneous, cast-polymer-plastic material with heat-, impact-, scratch-, and stain-resistance qualities.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of plumbing fixture indicated. Include selected fixture and trim, fittings, accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, and supports. Indicate materials and finishes, dimensions, construction details, and flow-control rates.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures to include operation and maintenance manuals.
- D. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other components of each category through one source from a single manufacturer.
 - 1. Exception: If fixtures, faucets, or other components are not available from a single manufacturer, obtain similar products from other manufacturers specified for that category.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- E. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- F. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.
- G. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:
 - 1. Enameled, Cast-Iron Fixtures: ASME A112.19.1M.
 - 2. Plastic Laundry Trays: ANSI Z124.6.
 - 3. Plastic Mop-Service Basins: ANSI Z124.6.
 - 4. Plastic Shower Enclosures: ANSI Z124.2.
 - 5. Porcelain-Enameled, Formed-Steel Fixtures: ASME A112.19.4M.
 - 6. Slip-Resistant Bathing Surfaces: ASTM F 462.
 - 7. Solid-Surface-Material Lavatories and Sinks: ANSI/ICPA SS-1.
 - 8. Stainless-Steel Commercial, Handwash Sinks: NSF 2 construction.
 - 9. Stainless-Steel Residential Sinks: ASME A112.19.3.
 - 10. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
 - 11. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.
 - 12. Water-Closet, Flushometer Tank Trim: ASSE 1037.
 - 13. Whirlpool Bathtub Fittings: ASME A112.19.8M.
- H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:
 - 1. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Side Spray: ASME A112.18.3M.
 - 2. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Hose-Thread Outlet: ASME A112.18.3M.
 - 3. Diverter Valves for Faucets with Hose Spray: ASSE 1025.
 - 4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
 - 5. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011.
 - 6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 - 7. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
 - 8. NSF Potable-Water Materials: NSF 61.
 - 9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 - 10. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
 - 11. Supply Fittings: ASME A112.18.1.
 - 12. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.

- I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for bathtub, bathtub/shower and shower faucets:
 1. Backflow Protection Devices for Hand-Held Showers: ASME A112.18.3M.
 2. Combination, Pressure-Equalizing and Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASSE 1016.
 3. Deck-Mounted Bath/Shower Transfer Valves: ASME 18.7.
 4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
 5. Hand-Held Showers: ASSE 1014.
 6. High-Temperature-Limit Controls for Thermal-Shock-Preventing Devices: ASTM F 445.
 7. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 8. Manual-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444.
 9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 10. Pressure-Equalizing-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
 11. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
 12. Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
- J. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:
 1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
 2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1.
 3. Manual-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037.
 4. Plastic Tubular Fittings: ASTM F 409.
 5. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
 6. Sensor-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037 and UL 1951.
- K. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 1. Disposers: ASSE 1008 and UL 430.
 2. Flexible Water Connectors: ASME A112.18.6.
 3. Floor Drains: ASME A112.6.3.
 4. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 5. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
 6. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 7. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
 8. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of whirlpools that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures of unit shell.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls, blowers, pumps, heaters, and timers.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 2. Warranty Period for Commercial Applications: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount, but no fewer than 2, of each type and size installed.
 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount, but no fewer than 2, of each type and size installed.
 3. Flushometer Valve, Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 2 of each type.
 4. Provide hinged-top wood or metal box, or individual metal boxes, with separate compartments for each type and size of extra materials listed above.
 5. Flushometer Tank, Repair Kits: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 2 of each type.
 6. Water-Closet Tank, Repair Kits: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 2 of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FAUCETS

- A. Lavatory Faucets:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Chicago Faucets.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. T&S Brass
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.2 FLUSHOMETERS

- A. Flushometers: Manually operated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Sloan Valve Company.
 - b. Toto.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description: Flushometer for urinal or water-closet-type fixture. Include brass body with corrosion-resistant internal components, non-hold-open feature, control stop with check valve, vacuum breaker, copper or brass tubing, and polished chrome-plated finish on exposed parts.
 - a. Internal Design: Diaphragm operation.
 - b. Style: Exposed.
 - c. Inlet Size: NPS 1 or NPS 1-1/4.
 - d. Trip Mechanism: Oscillating, lever-handle actuator.
 - 3. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.3 TOILET SEATS

- A. Toilet Seats:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Church Seats.
 - c. Eljer.
 - d. Kohler Co.
 - e. Olsonite Corp.
 - f. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description: Toilet seat for water-closet-type fixture shall incorporate the following unless indicated otherwise:
 - a. Material: Molded, solid plastic with antimicrobial agent.
 - b. Configuration: Open front without cover.
 - c. Size: Elongated.
 - d. Hinge Type: SS, self-sustaining, check.
 - e. Class: Heavy-duty commercial.
 - f. Color: White.

2.4 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers: Where indicated or scheduled.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Insul-Tect Products Co.
 - b. McGuire Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Plumberex Specialty Products Inc.
 - d. TRUEBRO, Inc.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
 - f. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description: Manufactured PVC plastic pipe covers over pipe insulation or insulation wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot-water supply and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
- B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures: Where indicated or scheduled.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. TRUEBRO, Inc.

- b. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for concealing plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

2.5 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Josam Company.
 - 2. Jay R. Smith.
 - 3. Wade.
 - 4. Watts.
 - 5. Zurn.
 - 6. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Water-Closet Supports:
 - 1. Description: Combination carrier designed for accessible or standard mounting height of wall-mounted, water-closet-type fixture. Include single or double, vertical or horizontal, hub-and-spigot or hubless waste fitting as required for piping arrangement; 4" waste and 2" vent; faceplates; couplings with gaskets; feet; and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and feet for installation in wide pipe space.
 - a. Wade 310 Series.
- C. Urinal Supports:
 - 1. Description: Type II, urinal carrier with hanger and bearing plates for wall-mounting, urinal-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
 - a. Wade 400-AM11 or pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.
 - a. Wade 400-AM11-M36 or pre-approved equal.
- D. Wall-Hung Lavatory Supports:
 - 1. Description: Type II, lavatory carrier with concealed arms and tie rod for wall-mounting, lavatory-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
 - a. Wade 520 or pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights with feet.
 - a. Wade 520-M36 or pre-approved equal.

2.6 INTERCEPTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Josam Company.
 - 2. MIFAB Manufacturing Inc.
 - 3. Jay R. Smith.
 - 4. Wade.
 - 5. Watts.
 - 6. Zurn.
 - 7. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Hair Interceptors:
 - 1. Description: Manufactured unit with removable screen or strainer and removable cover; designed to trap and retain hair.
 - a. Material: Brass or stainless-steel body.
 - b. Pipe Connections: NPS 1-1/4 or NPS 1-1/2.
- C. Sediment Interceptors:
 - 1. Description: Manufactured unit with removable screens or strainer and removable cover; designed to trap and retain waste material.
 - a. Material: Cast-iron or steel body with acid-resistant lining and coating or stainless-steel.
 - b. Pipe Connections: NPS 1-1/2 or NPS 2.

2.7 SHOWER RECEPTORS

- A. Shower Receptors:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Fiat Products.
- b. American Standard Companies, Inc.
- c. Kohler Co.
- d. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
- e. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.8 DISPOSERS

- A. Disposers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. In-Sink-Erator.
 - b. KitchenAid.
 - c. Maytag Co.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. See schedule on drawings.

2.9 WATER CLOSETS

- A. Water Closets:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. TOTO USA, Inc.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.10 URINALS

- A. Urinals:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. TOTO USA, Inc.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.11 LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatories:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Standard.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - c. TOTO USA, Inc.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.12 COMMERCIAL SINKS

- A. Commercial Sinks: Stainless steel.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Tabco.
 - b. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - c. Kohler.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.13 WASH FOUNTAINS

- A. Wash Fountains:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bradley Corporation.
 - b. Pre-approved equal.

2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.14 BATHTUBS

- A. Bathtubs:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Kohler Co.
 - b. American Standard.
 - c. TOTO, Inc.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.15 INDIVIDUAL SHOWERS ENCLOSURES

- A. Shower Enclosures:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Aquatic.
 - b. Aqua Glass Corporation.
 - c. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
 - d. LASCOS Bathware.
 - e. Fiat Products.
 - f. Kohler Co.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.16 GROUP SHOWERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Bradley Corporation.
 2. Pre-approved equal.
- B. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.17 KITCHEN SINKS

- A. Sinks:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Kohler Co.
 - b. Elkay.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.18 SERVICE SINKS/JANITOR'S SINKS

- A. Service Sinks/Janitor's Sinks:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Fiat Products.
 - b. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
 - c. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing fixture installation.
- B. Examine cabinets, counters, floors, and walls for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install off-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounting fixtures.
 - 1. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
 - 2. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.
 - 3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.
- C. Install back-outlet, wall-mounting fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.
- D. Install floor-mounting fixtures on closet flanges or other attachments to piping or building substrate.
- E. Install wall-mounted fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
- F. Install floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate and wall bracket and onto waste fitting seals.
- G. Install counter-mounted fixtures in and attached to casework.
- H. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- I. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball valves if supply stops are not specified with fixture. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- J. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.
- K. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.
- L. Install flushometer valves for accessible water closets and urinals with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- M. Install tanks for accessible, tank-type water closets with lever handle mounted on wide side of compartment.
- N. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- O. Install trap-seal liquid in dry urinals.
- P. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- Q. Install water-supply flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.
- R. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- S. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- T. Install traps on fixture outlets.
 - 1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
 - 2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.
- U. Install disposer in outlet of each sink indicated to have disposer. Install switch where indicated or in wall adjacent to sink if location is not indicated.
- V. Install escutcheons at piping wall ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Escutcheons shall be chrome plated.

- W. Set bathtubs, shower receptors and service sink basins in leveling bed of cement grout.
- X. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
- B. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
- C. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust faucets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.
- B. Operate and adjust disposers and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning units and controls.
- C. Adjust water pressure at faucets and flushometer valves to produce proper flow and stream.
- D. Replace washers and seals of leaking and dripping faucets and stops.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Do the following:
 - 1. Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts.
 - 2. Remove sediment and debris from drains.
- B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished fixtures, faucets, and fittings, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- B. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224000

SECTION 224700 - DRINKING FOUNTAINS/WATER COOLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following drinking fountains/water coolers and related components:
 - 1. Pressure water coolers.
 - 2. Water-station water coolers.
 - 3. Remote water coolers.
 - 4. Fixture supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible Drinking Fountain/Water Cooler: Fixture that can be approached and used by people with disabilities.
- B. Cast Polymer: Dense, cast-filled-polymer plastic.
- C. Drinking Fountain: Fixture with nozzle for delivering stream of water for drinking.
- D. Fitting: Device that controls flow of water into or out of fixture.
- E. Fixture: Drinking fountain or water cooler unless one is specifically indicated.
- F. Remote Water Cooler: Electrically powered equipment for generating cooled drinking water.
- G. Water Cooler: Electrically powered fixture for generating and delivering cooled drinking water.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each fixture indicated. Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act;" and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act;" for fixtures for people with disabilities.
- C. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- D. ARI Standard: Comply with ARI's "Directory of Certified Drinking Water Coolers" for style classifications.
- E. ARI Standard: Comply with ARI 1010, "Self-Contained, Mechanically Refrigerated Drinking-Water Coolers," for water coolers and with ARI's "Directory of Certified Drinking Water Coolers" for type and style classifications.

- F. ASHRAE Standard: Comply with ASHRAE 34, "Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants," for water coolers. Provide HFC 134a (tetrafluoroethane) refrigerant, unless otherwise indicated.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filter Cartridges: Equal to ten percent of amount installed for each type and size indicated, but no fewer than ten of each.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

- A. Water Coolers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Halsey Taylor.
 - 2. Description: ARI 1010, Type PB, pressure with bubbler, Style RE, recessed water cooler.
 - a. Cabinet: All stainless steel.
 - b. Bubbler: One, with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck for each of two bowls.
 - c. Control: Push button or bar.
 - d. Supply: NPS 3/8 with ball, gate, or globe valve.
 - e. Filter: One or more water filters complying with NSF 42 and NSF 53 for cyst and lead reduction to below EPA standards; with capacity sized for unit peak flow rate.
 - f. Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/4 minimum horizontal waste and trap complying with ASME A112.18.2.
 - g. Cooling System: Electric, with hermetically sealed compressor, cooling coil, air-cooled condensing unit, corrosion-resistant tubing, refrigerant, corrosion-resistant-metal storage tank, and adjustable thermostat.
 - 1) Capacity: 8 gph of 50 deg F cooled water from 80 deg F inlet water and 90 deg F ambient air temperature.
 - h. Ventilation Grille: Stainless steel, located below fountain.
 - i. Support: Mounting frame for attaching to substrate.
 - 3. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.2 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Josam Co.
 - 2. MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
 - 3. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - 4. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - 5. Watts Drainage Products Inc.; a div. of Watts Industries, Inc.
 - 6. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - 7. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: ASME A112.6.1M, water cooler carriers. Include vertical, steel uprights with feet and tie rods and bearing plates with mounting studs matching fixture to be supported.
 - 1. Type I: Hanger-type carrier with two vertical uprights.
 - 2. Type II: Bilevel, hanger-type carrier with three vertical uprights.
 - 3. Supports for Accessible Fixtures: Include rectangular, vertical, steel uprights instead of steel pipe uprights.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water and waste piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation. Verify that sizes and locations of piping and types of supports match those indicated.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures are to be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Use carrier off-floor supports for wall-mounting fixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Use mounting frames for recessed water coolers, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Use chrome-plated brass or copper tube, fittings, and valves in locations exposed to view. Plain copper tube, fittings, and valves may be used in concealed locations.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install off-floor supports affixed to building substrate and attach wall-mounting fixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install mounting frames affixed to building construction and attach recessed water coolers to mounting frames, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install fixtures level and plumb. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Use ball, gate, or globe valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- F. Install pipe escutcheons at wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding pipe fittings. Escutcheons are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- G. Seal joints between fixtures and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Sealants are specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Water Cooler Testing: After electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
 - 1. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
 - 2. Report test results in writing.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.
- B. Adjust water cooler temperature settings.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. After completing fixture installation, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 224700

SECTION 230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Coordination procedures.
 - 2. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 3. Transition fittings.
 - 4. Dielectric fittings.
 - 5. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 6. Sleeves.
 - 7. Escutcheons.
 - 8. Grout.
 - 9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 10. Painting and finishing.
 - 11. Concrete bases.
 - 12. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Each contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each contractor shall coordinate its operations with operations, included in different Sections, that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
 - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
 - 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Construction Manager and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
 - 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
 - 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 - 5. Progress meetings.
 - 6. Preinstallation conferences.
 - 7. Project closeout activities.
 - 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
- D. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
 - 1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

1.4 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
 - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to the coordination drawings by multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
 - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
 - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
 - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
 - f. Indicate required installation sequences.
 - g. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
 2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
 3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
 4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
 5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
 6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
 - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
 - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
 - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
 7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
 - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
 - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
 - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.
 - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
 8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
 - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
 9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.
 10. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."

1.5 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspace, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
 - 1. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
 - 2. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
 - 3. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
 - 1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
 - 2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Transition fittings.
 - 2. Dielectric fittings.
 - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 4. Escutcheons.

- B. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.
- D. A single contractor shall perform all mechanical system installations for this project. the contractor installing the VRF system, including VRF refrigerant piping, shall not be different than the general mechanical system installer or the DOAS, exhaust fans, and VAV installer. All of these systems shall be installed by a single contractor.
 - 1. The VRF installer shall be certified to install the manufacturer's equipment being installed. A minimum of two certified installers shall be present on the site at all times during construction to provide supervision and quality assurance inspection of all joints, fittings, and pressure testing. The VRF installer shall be certified for installing the manufacturers equipment being installed. The certified training shall have been completed within 6 months of the construction start date.
 - 2. Pre-approved contractor for the VRF system include the following:
 - a. Martin Mechanical.

- b. Edwards McDowell.
- c. CJ Industries.
- d. Alexander.
- e. Vazquez.
- f. Rand.
- g. Pro Mechanical.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for HVAC installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.

- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 - 1. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
 - 2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eslon Thermoplastics.
 - b. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.
 - b. Pre-approved equal.
- C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. NIBCO INC.
 - b. NIBCO, Inc.; Chemtrol Div.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Eclipse, Inc.
 - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
 - h. Pre-approved equal.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150 or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.

- d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150 or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corp.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Perfection Corp.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Co. of America.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.

- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.

- g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and screw or spring clips
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
 - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
 - l. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 - 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
 - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
 - 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
 - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
 - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.

- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - 3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
- L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
 - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
 - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Painting of HVAC systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.6 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases a minimum of 4 inches and a maximum of 6 inches deep, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 7. Use 3000-psi 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified

3.7 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.8 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.9 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.

G. Place grout around anchors.

H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 230500

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
 - 4. Fastener systems.
 - 5. Equipment supports.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 2. Equipment supports.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Copper Pipe Hangers:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.

2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
 - F. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
 - G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
 - H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
 - I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
 - J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
 - K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - L. Insulated Piping:
 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.

7. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 8. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 9. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 230553 - HVAC SYSTEM IDENTIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following mechanical identification materials and their installation:
 - 1. Equipment nameplates.
 - 2. Equipment markers.
 - 3. Equipment signs.
 - 4. Access panel and door markers.
 - 5. Pipe markers.
 - 6. Duct markers.
 - 7. Valve tags.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME A13.1, "Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems," for letter size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices for piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Equipment Nameplates: Metal, with data engraved or stamped, for permanent attachment on equipment.
 - 1. Data:
 - a. Manufacturer, product name, model number, and serial number.
 - b. Capacity, operating and power characteristics, and essential data.
 - c. Labels of tested compliances.
 - 2. Location: Accessible and visible.
 - 3. Fasteners: As required to mount on equipment.
- B. Equipment Markers: Engraved, color-coded laminated plastic. Include contact-type, permanent adhesive.
 - 1. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible.
 - 2. Data:
 - a. Name and plan number.
 - b. Equipment service.
 - c. Design capacity.
 - d. Other design parameters such as pressure drop, entering and leaving conditions, and speed.
 - 3. Size: 2-1/2 by 4 inches for control devices, dampers, and valves; 4-1/2 by 6 inches for equipment.
- C. Equipment Signs: ASTM D 709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic-resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2, black surface, black phenolic core, with white melamine subcore, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate in sizes required for message. Provide holes for mechanical fastening.
 - 1. Data: Instructions for operation of equipment and for safety procedures.
 - 2. Engraving: Manufacturer's standard letter style, of sizes and with terms to match equipment identification.
 - 3. Thickness: 1/16 inch, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type, permanent adhesive.
- D. Access Panel and Door Markers: 1/16-inch-thick, engraved laminated plastic, with abbreviated terms and numbers corresponding to identification. Provide 1/8-inch center hole for attachment.
 - 1. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type, permanent adhesive.

2.2 PIPING IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Manufactured Pipe Markers, General: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing direction of flow.
 - 1. Colors: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.
3. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Full-band pipe markers extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location.
4. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Either full-band or strip-type pipe markers at least three times letter height and of length required for label.
5. Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions; or as separate unit on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.

- B. Pretensioned Pipe Markers: Precoiled semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without adhesive.
- C. Shaped Pipe Markers: Preformed semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe with mechanical fasteners that do not penetrate insulation vapor barrier.
- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Markers: Plastic with pressure-sensitive, permanent-type, self-adhesive back.
- E. Plastic Tape: Continuously printed, vinyl tape at least 3 mils thick with pressure-sensitive, permanent-type, self-adhesive back.
 1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: 3/4 inch minimum.
 2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches or Larger: 1-1/2 inches minimum.

2.3 DUCT IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Duct Markers: Engraved, color-coded laminated plastic. Include direction of airflow and duct service (such as supply, return, and exhaust). Include contact-type, permanent adhesive.

2.4 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers, with numbering scheme. Provide 5/32-inch hole for fastener.
 1. Material: 0.032-inch-thick brass.
 2. Valve-Tag Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS, GENERAL

- A. Products specified are for applications referenced in other Sections. If more than single-type material, device, or label is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.

3.2 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install and permanently fasten equipment nameplates on each major item of mechanical equipment that does not have nameplate or has nameplate that is damaged or located where not easily visible. Locate nameplates where accessible and visible. Include nameplates for the following general categories of equipment:
 1. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
 2. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
 3. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
 4. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
 5. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
- B. Install equipment markers with permanent adhesive on or near each major item of mechanical equipment. Data required for markers may be included on signs, and markers may be omitted if both are indicated.
 1. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 2. Data: Distinguish among multiple units, indicate operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, warn of hazards and improper operations, and identify units.
 3. Locate markers where accessible and visible. Include markers for the following general categories of equipment:
 - a. Main control and operating valves, including safety devices and hazardous units such as gas outlets.
 - b. Meters, gages, thermometers, and similar units.
 - c. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.

- d. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
 - e. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
 - f. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
 - g. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
 - h. Tanks and pressure vessels.
 - i. Strainers, filters, humidifiers, water-treatment systems, and similar equipment.
- C. Install equipment signs with screws or permanent adhesive on or near each major item of mechanical equipment. Locate signs where accessible and visible.
- 1. Identify mechanical equipment with equipment markers in the following color codes:
 - a. Green: For cooling equipment and components.
 - b. Yellow: For heating equipment and components.
 - c. Orange: For combination cooling and heating equipment and components.
 - d. Brown: For energy-reclamation equipment and components.
 - 2. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 - 3. Data: Distinguish among multiple units, indicate operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, warn of hazards and improper operations, and identify units.
 - 4. Include signs for the following general categories of equipment:
 - a. Main control and operating valves, including safety devices and hazardous units such as gas outlets.
 - b. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
 - c. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
 - d. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
 - e. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
 - f. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
 - g. Tanks and pressure vessels.
 - h. Strainers, filters, humidifiers, water-treatment systems, and similar equipment.
- D. Install access panel markers with screws on equipment access panels.

3.3 PIPING IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install manufactured pipe markers indicating service on each piping system. Install with flow indication arrows showing direction of flow.
- 1. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Pretensioned pipe markers. Use size to ensure a tight fit.
 - 2. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Self-adhesive pipe markers. Use color-coded, self-adhesive plastic tape, 1-1/2 inches wide, lapped at least 1-1/2 inches at both ends of pipe marker, and covering full circumference of pipe.
 - 3. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Shaped pipe markers. Use size to match pipe and secure with fasteners.
 - 4. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Self-adhesive pipe markers. Use color-coded, self-adhesive plastic tape, at least 1-1/2 inches wide, lapped at least 3 inches at both ends of pipe marker, and covering full circumference of pipe.
- B. Locate pipe markers and color bands where piping is exposed in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior nonconcealed locations as follows:
- 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and nonaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced markers.

3.4 DUCT IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install duct markers with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
- 1. Green: For cold-air supply ducts.
 - 2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
 - 3. Blue: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.

4. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

- B. Locate markers near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; plumbing fixture supply stops; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following:
 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - c. Gas: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - d. Steam: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 2. Valve-Tag Color:
 - a. Cold Water: Blue.
 - b. Hot Water: Red.
 - c. Gas: Yellow.
 3. Letter Color:
 - a. Cold Water: White.
 - b. Hot Water: White.
 - c. Gas: White.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Relocate mechanical identification materials and devices that have become visually blocked by other work.
- B. Clean faces of mechanical identification devices and glass frames of valve schedules.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
 - 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
 - a. Variable-flow hydronic systems.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- B. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- B. Certified TAB reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by NEBB or AABC.
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by NEBB or AABC.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by NEBB or AABC as a TAB technician.
- B. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
 - 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
 - 2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- C. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Owner and Commissioning Authority.
- D. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."
- E. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- F. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

- B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- F. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- G. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- H. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- I. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- J. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- K. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.
- L. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- M. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- N. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- O. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
 - 1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
 - 2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
 - 3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - 4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
 - 5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
 - 6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
 - 7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
 - 8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Division 23 Section "HVAC Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts."

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
 - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
 - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
 - 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
 - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
 - 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
 - 5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.

6. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
 2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
 3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
 2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a minimum set-point airflow with the remainder at maximum airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
- B. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Set outdoor-air dampers at minimum, and set return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
 2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
 3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
 4. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
 6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
 - a. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
 8. Record final fan-performance data.
- C. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems without Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Balance variable-air-volume systems the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 2. Set terminal units and supply fan at full-airflow condition.
 3. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow and verify operation of the static-pressure controller. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 4. Readjust fan airflow for final maximum readings.
 5. Measure operating static pressure at the sensor that controls the supply fan if one is installed, and verify operation of the static-pressure controller.
 6. Set supply fan at minimum airflow if minimum airflow is indicated. Measure static pressure to verify that it is being maintained by the controller.
 7. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave the outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
 8. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
 - a. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
- D. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems with Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Set system at maximum indicated airflow by setting the required number of terminal units at minimum airflow. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
 2. Adjust supply fan to maximum indicated airflow with the variable-airflow controller set at maximum airflow.
 3. Set terminal units at full-airflow condition.
 4. Adjust terminal units starting at the supply-fan end of the system and continuing progressively to the end of the system. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 5. Adjust terminal units for minimum airflow.
 6. Measure static pressure at the sensor.
 7. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.

3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data, and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against the approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:
 1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
 2. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
 3. Check makeup water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
 4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation, and set at indicated flow.
 5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
 6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
 7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
 8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
 - 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 - 3. Motor rpm.
 - 4. Efficiency rating.
 - 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 - 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
 - 7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

- A. Balance water flow through each evaporator and condenser to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:
 - 1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
 - 2. For water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
 - 3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
 - 4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
 - 5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
 - 6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
 - 7. For air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR COOLING TOWERS

- A. Shut off makeup water for the duration of the test, and verify that makeup and blowdown systems are fully operational after tests and before leaving the equipment. Perform the following tests and record the results:
 - 1. Measure condenser-water flow to each cell of the cooling tower.
 - 2. Measure entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
 - 3. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of entering air.
 - 4. Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of leaving air.
 - 5. Measure condenser-water flow rate recirculating through the cooling tower.
 - 6. Measure cooling-tower spray pump discharge pressure.
 - 7. Adjust water level and feed rate of makeup water system.
 - 8. Measure flow through bypass.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

- A. Hydronic Boilers: Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
 - 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
 - 2. Water flow rate.
 - 3. Water pressure drop.
 - 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
 - 6. Airflow.
 - 7. Air pressure drop.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
 - 1. Nameplate data.
 - 2. Airflow.

3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.
4. Air pressure drop.
5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.

1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
3. Check the refrigerant charge.
4. Check the condition of filters.
5. Check the condition of coils.
6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:

1. New filters are installed.
2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
3. Drain pans are clean.
4. Fans are clean.
5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.

C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.

1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
3. If calculations increase or decrease the air flow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
4. Balance each air outlet.

3.15 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.

3.16 REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.17 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
1. Pump curves.
 2. Fan curves.
 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
1. Title page.
 2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
 3. Project name.
 4. Project location.
 5. Architect's name and address.
 6. Engineer's name and address.
 7. Contractor's name and address.
 8. Report date.
 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 2. Water and steam flow rates.
 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 5. Terminal units.
 6. Balancing stations.
 7. Position of balancing devices.

3.18 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for ductwork with lining.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets or covering.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after any required ductwork pressure testing is complete. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in Duct Insulation Schedule for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
 - d. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- E. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
 - b. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
 - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F. Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. Tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Super Firetemp M.
 - b. Pabco.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek.
 - b. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.
 - c. 3M; Fire Barrier Wrap Products.
 - d. Morgan Thermal Ceramics.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand; 85-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-50 AHV2.
 - b. Foster Brand; 30-36.
 - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. FSK Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand; 95-44.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.

4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

2.9 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI; 491 AWF FSK.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation; Fasson 0827.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
 1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- E. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- F. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- G. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations. No penetration in insulation is permitted at hangers, supports, and other projections.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and supports.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- I. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive sealing tape.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- J. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- K. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- L. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 1. Firestopping materials and fire-resistive joint sealers applicable for the installation.
- C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket or Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides or bottom with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides or bottom with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.6 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 230713

SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
 - 5. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in Piping Insulation Schedule.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- D. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following or equivalent:
 - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.
 - b. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
 - 3. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- E. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
 - b. AP Armaflex.
 - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I or Type II.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.
 - b. Johns Manville.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
 - b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 3. Type II, 1200 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero seal.
 - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
 - c. Foster Brand; 85-75.
 - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.

- e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. ASJ Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand; 85-50.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
 - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
- 1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-50 AHV2.
 - b. Foster Brand; 30-36.
 - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 - 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. ASJ Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 4. Color: White.
 - 5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules. Use the following shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, traps and mechanical joints.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 3. Color: White.
 - 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers.
- C. Metal Jacket:
 - 1. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Corrugated, 0.024 inch thick.
 - b. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Width: 3 inches.
 - 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
 - 1. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
 - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints and seams. No penetration of insulation at hangers or supports is allowed. Seal anchors, guides and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap.
 - 4. On hot services it is permissible to staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, no staples are allowed.
 - 5. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 6. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Install with firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- D. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
 - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.

4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

- A. Install insulation as inserts at pipe hangers and supports.
1. Insulation shall be the same thickness as the adjoining insulation.
 2. Provide factory applied jacket the same material as the adjoining insulation.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
 - 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
 - 3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- B. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 230900 - INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes control equipment for HVAC systems and components, including control components for terminal heating and cooling units not supplied with factory-wired controls.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each control device indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Schematic flow diagrams.
 - 2. Power, signal, and control wiring diagrams.
 - 3. Details of control panel faces.
 - 4. Valve schedule.
 - 5. DDC System Hardware: Wiring diagrams, schematic floor plans, and schematic control diagrams.
 - 6. Control System Software: Schematic diagrams, written descriptions, and points list.
- C. Software and firmware operational documentation.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and maintenance data.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers specified:
 - 1. Trane.
 - 2. Automated Logic.

2.2 CONTROL SYSTEM

- A. control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, and accessories to control mechanical systems.
- B. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, accessories, and software connected to distributed controllers operating in multiuser, multitasking environment on token-passing network and programmed to control mechanical systems. An operator workstation permits interface with the network via dynamic color graphics with each mechanical system, building floor plan, and control device depicted by point-and-click graphics.
- C. All point of user interface shall be on standard PC's that do not require the purchase of special software from the BMS manufacturer for use as a building operations terminal. The primary point of interface on these PC's will be a standard web browser.
- D. The BMS shall be a web-based application with microprocessor-based interoperable BACnet or LonWorks controllers in accordance with the ANSI/ASHRAE 135-2004 and most recent addendums. The system supplier must provide a PICS document showing the installed systems compliance level to the ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135-2004. The BMS system shall communicate using the BACnet or LonWorks "open" protocol at both the supervisor and device level.

- E. Integration of standalone microprocessors into the BMS shall be provided by either hardware points or as part of the packaged equipment control. Acceptable protocols to be provided for integration are:

1. BACnet IP
2. BACnet Ethernet
3. BACnet MSTP
4. BACnet ARCnet
5. Modbus RTU

- F. BMS points in addition to and including those outlined herein or on the drawings shall be provided:

1. Temperatures after each coil shall be monitored.
2. Temperatures before and after any heat transfer occurrence, such as at the inlet and outlet of the energy recovery unit heat recovery wheel.
3. Supply air temperature, return air temperature, mixed air temperature and space temperature shall be monitored for each unit.
4. Digital status for each piece of controlled equipment shall be monitored.
5. For each physical point provide a document which, at a minimum, shall indicate the following:
 - a. User point identification name
 - b. Logical point name
 - c. Alarmable (yes or no)
 - d. Point description
 - e. BMS panel ID
 - f. Fail position (open/closed, on/off)
 - g. Digital or Analog
 - h. Analog control range (temperature, pressure, etc.)
 - i. Analog input/output range (Volts, mA, psi, etc.)
 - j. Analog high limit alarm
 - k. Analog low limit alarm
 - l. For each virtual point provide a document which, at a minimum, shall indicate the following: User point identification name, Logical point name, Point function and use.
6. All input points shall be alarmed. All alarms shall allow recognition, management and remote alarming.

- G. The system shall be capable of supporting an unlimited number of clients using a standard web browser such as Internet Explorer or Mozilla Firefox. Systems requiring additional software (to enable a standard web browser) to be resident on the client machine, or manufacturer-specific browsers shall not be acceptable.

2.3 DDC EQUIPMENT

- A. Operator Workstation: PC-based microcomputer with minimum configuration as follows:

1. Motherboard: With 8 integrated USB 2.0 ports, integrated Intel Pro 10/100 (Ethernet), integrated audio, bios, and hardware monitoring.
2. Processor: Intel Pentium 4, 2.0 GHz.
3. Random-Access Memory: 512MB.
4. Graphics: Video adapter, minimum 1280 x 1024 pixels, 64-MB video memory, with TV out.
5. Monitor: 17 inches, LCD color.
6. Keyboard: QWERTY, 105 keys in ergonomic shape.
7. Floppy-Disk Drive: 1.44 MB.
8. Hard-Disk Drive: 80 GB.
9. CD-ROM Read/Write Drive: 48x24x48.
10. Mouse: Three button, optical.
11. Uninterruptible Power Supply: 2 kVa.
12. Operating System: Microsoft Windows XP Professional with high-speed Internet access.
13. Printer: Color, ink-jet type as follows:
 - a. Print Head: 4800 x 1200 dpi optimized color resolution.
 - b. Paper Handling: Minimum of 100 sheets.
 - c. Print Speed: Minimum of 17 ppm in black and 12 ppm in color.
 - d. Application Software.

- B. Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, random-access memory; local operator access and display panel; integral interface equipment; and backup power source.

1. Units monitor or control each I/O point; process information; execute commands from other control units, devices, and operator stations; and download from or upload to operator workstation.
2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
 - a. Global communications.
 - b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.

- c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
- d. Software applications, scheduling, and alarm processing.
- e. Testing and developing control algorithms without disrupting field hardware and controlled environment.

C. Local Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with electronically programmable, nonvolatile, read-only memory; and backup power source.

- 1. Units monitor or control each I/O point, process information, and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
- 2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
 - a. Global communications.
 - b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
 - c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
- 3. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation.

D. I/O Interface: Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into system through controllers. Protect points so that shorting will cause no damage to controllers.

- 1. Binary Inputs: Allow monitoring of on-off signals without external power.
- 2. Pulse Accumulation Inputs: Accept up to 10 pulses per second.
- 3. Analog Inputs: Allow monitoring of low-voltage (0- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals.
- 4. Binary Outputs: Provide on-off or pulsed low-voltage signal, selectable for normally open or normally closed operation with three-position (on-off-auto) override switches and status lights.
- 5. Analog Outputs: Provide modulating signal, either low voltage (0- to 10-V dc) or current (4 to 20 mA) with status lights, two-position (auto-manual) switch, and manually adjustable potentiometer.
- 6. Tri-State Outputs: Provide two coordinated binary outputs for control of three-point, floating-type electronic actuators.
- 7. Universal I/Os: Provide software selectable binary or analog outputs.

E. Power Supplies: Transformers with Class 2 current-limiting type or overcurrent protection; limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity. DC power supply shall match output current and voltage requirements and be full-wave rectifier type with the following:

- 1. Output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak to peak.
- 2. Combined 1 percent line and load regulation with 100-mic.sec. response time for 50 percent load changes.
- 3. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and be able to withstand 150 percent overload for at least 3 seconds without failure.

F. Power Line Filtering: Internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations or controllers with the following:

- 1. Minimum dielectric strength of 1000 V.
- 2. Maximum response time of 10 nanoseconds.
- 3. Minimum transverse-mode noise attenuation of 65 dB.
- 4. Minimum common-mode noise attenuation of 150 dB at 40 to 100 Hz.

2.4 UNITARY CONTROLLERS

A. Unitized, capable of stand-alone operation with sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements, and with sufficient I/O capacity for the application.

- 1. Configuration: Diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor; wiring termination to terminal strip or card connected with ribbon cable; memory with bios; and 72-hour battery backup.
- 2. Operating System: Manage I/O communication to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow central monitoring and alarms. Perform automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.
- 3. Enclosure: Dustproof rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.

2.5 ANALOG CONTROLLERS

A. Step Controllers: 6- or 10-stage type, with heavy-duty switching rated to handle loads and operated by electric motor.

B. Electric, Outdoor-Reset Controllers: Remote-bulb or bimetal rod-and-tube type, proportioning action with adjustable throttling range, adjustable set point, scale range minus 10 to plus 70 deg F, and single- or double-pole contacts.

- C. Electronic Controllers: Wheatstone-bridge-amplifier type, in steel enclosure with provision for remote-resistance readjustment. Identify adjustments on controllers, including proportional band and authority.
 - 1. Single controllers can be integral with control motor if provided with accessible control readjustment potentiometer.

- D. Fan-Speed Controllers: Solid-state model providing field-adjustable proportional control of motor speed from maximum to minimum of 55 percent and on-off action below minimum fan speed. Controller shall briefly apply full voltage, when motor is started, to rapidly bring motor up to minimum speed. Equip with filtered circuit to eliminate radio interference.

2.6 ELECTRONIC SENSORS

- A. Description: Vibration and corrosion resistant; for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required.

- B. Thermistor Temperature Sensors and Transmitters:

- 1. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.5 deg F at calibration point.
- 2. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
- 3. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 18 inches long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m).
- 4. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 36 inches long, flexible, 18 inches long, rigid; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 10 sq. ft.
- 5. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass or stainless-steel socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches.
- 6. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
 - a. Set-Point Adjustment: Exposed.
 - b. Set-Point Indication: Concealed.
 - c. Thermometer: Concealed.
 - d. Color: color selection from manufacturer's full range.
 - e. Orientation: Vertical.
- 7. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
- 8. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.

- C. Pressure Transmitters/Transducers:

- 1. Static-Pressure Transmitter: Nondirectional sensor with suitable range for expected input, and temperature compensated.
 - a. Accuracy: 2 percent of full scale with repeatability of 0.5 percent.
 - b. Output: 4 to 20 mA.
 - c. Building Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 0.25-inch wg.
 - d. Duct Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 5-inch wg.
- 2. Water Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
- 3. Water Differential-Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure and tested to 300-psig; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
- 4. Differential-Pressure Switch (Air or Water): Snap acting, with pilot-duty rating and with suitable scale range and differential.
- 5. Pressure Transmitters: Direct acting for gas or liquid service; range suitable for system; linear output 4 to 20 mA.

2.7 STATUS SENSORS

- A. Status Inputs for Fans: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable range of 0- to 5-inch wg.
- B. Status Inputs for Pumps: Differential-pressure switch with pilot-duty rating and with adjustable pressure-differential range of 8 to 60 psig, piped across pump.
- C. Status Inputs for Electric Motors: Comply with ISA 50.00.01, current-sensing fixed- or split-core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 175 percent of rated motor current.
- D. Voltage Transmitter (100- to 600-V ac): Comply with ISA 50.00.01, single-loop, self-powered transmitter, adjustable, with suitable range and 1 percent full-scale accuracy.

- E. Power Monitor: 3-phase type with disconnect/shorting switch assembly, listed voltage and current transformers, with pulse kilowatt hour output and 4- to 20-mA kW output, with maximum 2 percent error at 1.0 power factor and 2.5 percent error at 0.5 power factor.
- F. Current Switches: Self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current, selected to match current and system output requirements.
- G. Electronic Valve/Damper Position Indicator: Visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
- H. Water-Flow Switches: Bellows-actuated mercury or snap-acting type with pilot-duty rating, stainless-steel or bronze paddle, with appropriate range and differential adjustment, in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.

2.8 THERMOSTATS

- A. Electric, solid-state, microcomputer-based room thermostat with remote sensor.
 - 1. Automatic switching from heating to cooling.
 - 2. Preferential rate control to minimize overshoot and deviation from set point.
 - 3. Set up for four separate temperatures per day.
 - 4. Instant override of set point for continuous or timed period from 1 hour to 31 days.
 - 5. Short-cycle protection.
 - 6. Programming based on weekday, Saturday, and Sunday.
 - 7. Selection features include degree F or degree C display, 12- or 24-hour clock, keyboard disable, remote sensor, and fan on-auto.
 - 8. Battery replacement without program loss.
 - 9. Thermostat display features include the following:
 - a. Time of day.
 - b. Actual room temperature.
 - c. Programmed temperature.
 - d. Programmed time.
 - e. Duration of timed override.
 - f. Day of week.
 - g. System mode indications include "heating," "off," "fan auto," and "fan on."
- B. Low-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: NEMA DC 3, 24-V, bimetal-operated, mercury-switch type, with adjustable or fixed anticipation heater, concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F set-point range, and 2 deg F maximum differential.
- C. Line-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: Bimetal-actuated, open contact or bellows-actuated, enclosed, snap-switch or equivalent solid-state type, with heat anticipator; listed for electrical rating; with concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F set-point range, and 2 deg F maximum differential.
 - 1. Electric Heating Thermostats: Equip with off position on dial wired to break ungrounded conductors.
 - 2. Selector Switch: Integral, manual on-off-auto.
- D. Remote-Bulb Thermostats: On-off or modulating type, liquid filled to compensate for changes in ambient temperature; with copper capillary and bulb, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Bulbs in water lines with separate wells of same material as bulb.
 - 2. Bulbs in air ducts with flanges and shields.
 - 3. Averaging Elements: Copper tubing with either single- or multiple-unit elements, extended to cover full width of duct or unit; adequately supported.
 - 4. Scale settings and differential settings are clearly visible and adjustable from front of instrument.
 - 5. On-Off Thermostat: With precision snap switches and with electrical ratings required by application.
 - 6. Modulating Thermostats: Construct so complete potentiometer coil and wiper assembly is removable for inspection or replacement without disturbing calibration of instrument.
- E. Fire-Protection Thermostats: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction; with fixed or adjustable settings to operate at not less than 75 deg F above normal maximum operating temperature, and the following:
 - 1. Reset: Manual.
 - 2. Reset: Automatic, with control circuit arranged to require manual reset at central control panel; with pilot light and reset switch on panel labeled to indicate operation.

- F. Room Thermostat Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
 - 1. Set-Point Adjustment: Exposed.
 - 2. Set-Point Indication: Concealed.
 - 3. Thermometer: Concealed.
 - 4. Color: Color selection from manufacturer's full range.
 - 5. Orientation: Vertical.
- G. Room thermostat accessories include the following:
 - 1. Insulating Bases: For thermostats located on exterior walls.
 - 2. Thermostat Guards: Metal wire, tamperproof.
 - 3. Adjusting Key: As required for calibration and cover screws.
 - 4. Set-Point Adjustment: 1/2-inch- diameter, adjustment knob.
- H. Immersion Thermostat: Remote-bulb or bimetal rod-and-tube type, proportioning action with adjustable throttling range and adjustable set point.
- I. Airstream Thermostats: Two-pipe, fully proportional, single-temperature type; with adjustable set point in middle of range, adjustable throttling range, plug-in test fitting or permanent pressure gage, remote bulb, bimetal rod and tube, or averaging element.
- J. Electric, Low-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual-reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches of bulb length is equal to or below set point.
 - 1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet.
 - 2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. of coil surface.
- K. Electric, High-Limit Duct Thermostat: Snap-acting, single-pole, single-throw, manual-reset switch that trips if temperature sensed across any 12 inches of bulb length is equal to or above set point.
 - 1. Bulb Length: Minimum 20 feet.
 - 2. Quantity: One thermostat for every 20 sq. ft. of coil surface.
- L. Heating/Cooling Valve-Top Thermostats: Proportional acting for proportional flow, with molded-rubber diaphragm, remote-bulb liquid-filled element, direct and reverse acting at minimum shutoff pressure of 25 psig, and cast housing with position indicator and adjusting knob.

2.9 ACTUATORS

- A. Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Motors."
 - 2. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
 - 3. Nonspring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
 - 4. Spring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
 - 5. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
 - 6. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
- B. Electronic Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
 - 1. Valves: Size for torque required for valve close off at maximum pump differential pressure.
 - 2. Dampers: Size for running torque calculated as follows:
 - a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
 - b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
 - c. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
 - d. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
 - e. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm: Increase running torque by 1.5.
 - f. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm: Increase running torque by 2.0.
 - 3. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.

4. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
5. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism. Provide external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
6. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24-V ac.
7. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.
8. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
9. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F.
10. Run Time: 150 seconds.

2.10 CONTROL VALVES

- A. Control Valves: Factory fabricated, of type, body material, and pressure class based on maximum pressure and temperature rating of piping system, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Hydronic system globe valves shall have the following characteristics:
 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Class 125 bronze body, bronze trim, rising stem, renewable composition disc, and screwed ends with backseating capacity repackable under pressure.
 2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Class 125 iron body, bronze trim, rising stem, plug-type disc, flanged ends, and renewable seat and disc.
 3. Internal Construction: Replaceable plugs and stainless-steel or brass seats.
 - a. Single-Seated Valves: Cage trim provides seating and guiding surfaces for plug on top and bottom.
 - b. Double-Seated Valves: Balanced plug; cage trim provides seating and guiding surfaces for plugs on top and bottom.
 4. Sizing: 3-psig maximum pressure drop at design flow rate or the following:
 - a. Two Position: Line size.
 - b. Two-Way Modulating: Either the value specified above or twice the load pressure drop, whichever is more.
 - c. Three-Way Modulating: Twice the load pressure drop, but not more than value specified above.
 5. Flow Characteristics: Two-way valves shall have equal percentage characteristics; three-way valves shall have linear characteristics.
 6. Close-Off (Differential) Pressure Rating: Combination of actuator and trim shall provide minimum close-off pressure rating of 150 percent of total system (pump) head for two-way valves and 100 percent of pressure differential across valve or 100 percent of total system (pump) head.

2.11 DAMPERS

- A. Dampers: AMCA-rated, parallel-blade design; 0.108-inch minimum thick, galvanized-steel or 0.125-inch-minimum thick, extruded-aluminum frames with holes for duct mounting; damper blades shall not be less than 0.064-inch-thick galvanized steel with maximum blade width of 8 inches and length of 48 inches.
 1. Secure blades to 1/2-inch-diameter, zinc-plated axles using zinc-plated hardware, with oil-impregnated sintered bronze blade bearings, blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass, ends sealed against spring-stainless-steel blade bearings, and thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
 2. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
 3. Edge Seals, Standard Pressure Applications: Closed-cell neoprene.
 4. Edge Seals, Low-Leakage Applications: Use inflatable blade edging or replaceable rubber blade seals and spring-loaded stainless-steel side seals, rated for leakage at less than 10 cfm per sq. ft. of damper area, at differential pressure of 4-inch wg when damper is held by torque of 50 in. x lbf; when tested according to AMCA 500D.

2.12 CONTROL CABLE

- A. All exposed cable and cable installed above in accessible ceilings shall be in conduit. Plenum rated cable is acceptable for installation above accessible ceilings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 48 inches above the floor.
 1. Install averaging elements in ducts and plenums in crossing or zigzag pattern.
- B. Install guards on thermostats in the following locations:
 1. Where indicated.

- C. Install automatic dampers according to Division 15 Section "Duct Accessories."
- D. Install damper motors on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.
- E. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Division 15 Section "Mechanical Identification."
- F. Install hydronic instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 15 Section "Hydronic Piping."
- G. Install refrigerant instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Division 15 Section "Refrigerant Piping."
- H. Install duct volume-control dampers according to Division 15 Sections specifying air ducts.

3.2 ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. All electrical control wiring and power wiring to control panels shall be the responsibility of the controls contractor.
- B. Install raceways, boxes, and cabinets according to Division 16 Section "Raceways and Boxes."
- C. Install building wire and cable according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."
- D. Install signal and communication cable as described below:
 - 1. Install exposed cable in raceway.
 - 2. Install concealed cable in raceway.
 - 3. Bundle and harness multiconductor instrument cable in place of single cables where several cables follow a common path.
 - 4. Fasten flexible conductors, bridging cabinets and doors, along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors.
 - 5. Number-code or color-code conductors for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control cables.
 - 6. Install wire and cable with sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
- E. Connect manual-reset limit controls independent of manual-control switch positions. Automatic duct heater resets may be connected in interlock circuit of power controllers.
- F. Connect hand-off-auto selector switches to override automatic interlock controls when switch is in hand position.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
 - 3. Test calibration of controllers by disconnecting input sensors and stimulating operation with compatible signal generator.
 - 4. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
 - 5. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
 - 6. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
 - 7. Test software and hardware interlocks.
- C. DDC Verification:
 - 1. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop or leak checks.
 - 2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
 - 3. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.

4. Check instrument tubing for proper fittings, slope, material, and support.
 5. Check pressure instruments, piping slope, installation of valve manifold, and self-contained pressure regulators.
 6. Check temperature instruments and material and length of sensing elements.
 7. Check control valves. Verify that they are in correct direction.
 8. Check air-operated dampers. Verify that pressure gages are provided and that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
 9. Check DDC system as follows:
 - a. Verify that DDC controller power supply is from emergency power supply, if applicable.
 - b. Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.
 - c. Verify that spare I/O capacity has been provided.
 - d. Verify that DDC controllers are protected from power supply surges.
- D. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

3.4 CONTROL AND MONITORING POINTS

- A. All systems not included below:
- B. 1. Refer to Sequence of Operation on Drawings.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative for minimum 24 hours of on-site training (six 4-hour sessions) to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC instrumentation and controls. Refer to Division 1 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 230900

SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes pipe and fitting materials, joining methods, special-duty valves, and specialties for the following:
 - 1. Hot-water heating piping.
 - 2. Chilled-water piping.
 - 3. Condenser-water piping.
 - 4. Makeup-water piping.
 - 5. Condensate-drain piping.
 - 6. Blowdown-drain piping.
 - 7. Air-vent piping.
 - 8. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.
- B. See Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps" for pumps, motors, and accessories for hydronic piping.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature:
 - 1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
 - 2. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg F.
 - 3. Condenser-Water Piping: 150 psig at 150 deg F.
 - 4. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg F.
 - 5. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
 - 6. Blowdown-Drain Piping: 200 deg F.
 - 7. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
 - 8. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cement.
 - 2. Pressure-seal fittings.
 - 3. Valves. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
 - 4. Air control devices.
 - 5. Chemical treatment.
 - 6. Hydronic specialties.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail, at 1/4 scale, the piping layout, fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. S. P. Fittings; a division of Star Pipe Products.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75, copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
 - 3. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated EPDM gasket rated for minimum 230 deg F for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; type, grade, and wall thickness as indicated in Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. Central Sprinkler Company; a division of Tyco Fire & Building Products.
 - c. National Fittings, Inc.
 - d. S. P. Fittings; a division of Star Pipe Products.
 - e. Victaulic Company.
 - f. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
 - 3. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and synthetic rubber gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.

2.3 POLYPROPYLENE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe shall be manufactured from a PP-R resin meeting the short-term properties and long-term strength requirements of ASTM F 2389. The pipe shall contain no rework or recycled materials except that generated in the manufacturer's own plant from resin of the same specification from the same raw material. All pipe shall be made in a three layer extrusion process. Domestic hot water shall contain a fiber layer (faser) to restrict thermal expansion. All pipe shall comply with the rated pressure requirements of ASTM F 2389. All pipe shall be certified by NSF International as complying with NSF 14, NSF 61, and ASTM F 2389 or CSA B137.11.
- B. Pipe shall be Aquatherm® Greenpipe®, or Greenpipe® Faser®, available from Aquatherm, Inc. or pre-approved equal.
- C. Fittings:
 - 1. Fittings shall be manufactured from a PP-R resin meeting the short-term properties and long-term strength requirements of ASTM F 2389. The fittings shall contain no rework or recycled materials except that generated in the manufacturer's own plant from resin of the same specification from the same raw material. All fittings shall be certified by NSF International as complying with NSF 14, NSF 61, and ASTM F 2389 or CSA B137.11.
 - 2. Fittings shall be aquatherm® Greenpipe® available from Aquatherm, Inc. or pre-approved equal.
- D. Warranty:
 - 1. Manufacturer shall warrant pipe and fittings for 10 years to be free of defects in materials or workmanship.
 - 2. Warranty shall cover labor and material costs of repairing and/or replacing defective materials and repairing any incidental damage caused by failure of the piping system do to defects in materials or workmanship.

2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- E. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - d. Jomar International Ltd.
 - e. Matco-Norca, Inc.
 - f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
 - i. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

2.6 VALVES

- A. Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."

2.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Bypass Chemical Feeder: Welded steel construction; 125-psig working pressure; 5-gal. capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.
 - 1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.
- B. Ethylene and Propylene Glycol: Industrial grade with corrosion inhibitors and environmental-stabilizer additives for mixing with water in systems indicated to contain antifreeze or glycol solutions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or pressure-seal joints.
 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
 3. Equipment/coil connections may be mechanical joints.
- B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:
1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; roll grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and roll grooved, mechanical joints.
 3. Equipment/coil connections may be mechanical joints.
- C. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
 2. Equipment/coil connections may be mechanical joints.
- D. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:
1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
 2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; roll grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and roll grooved, mechanical joints.
 3. Equipment/coil connections may be mechanical joints.
- E. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following:
1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
 2. Alternate: Aquatherm piping system.
- F. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
- G. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type M, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
- H. Air-Vent Piping:
1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
- I. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to the piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicate piping locations and arrangements if such were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install valves according to Division 23 Section "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."
- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install strainers on inlet side of each, pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, in-line pump, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 nipple and ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2.
- T. Identify piping as specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- V. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 23 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 23 Section "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."
- X. Polypropylene Piping Applications: Install listed pipe materials and joining methods below in the following applications:
 - 1. Polypropylene (PP-R) piping in SDR 6, 7.4 or 11 based on the required minimum pressure rating and use temperature.

3.3 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
 - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 - 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - 4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 3: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 4: Maximum span, 14 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
8. NPS 6: Maximum span, 17 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
9. NPS 8: Maximum span, 19 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.
10. NPS 10: Maximum span, 20 feet; minimum rod size, 3/4 inch.

D. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

E. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.

B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

E. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

F. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.

G. Polypropylene Fusion Welding of Joints:

1. Install fittings and joints using socket-fusion, electrofusion, or butt-fusion as applicable for the fitting type. All fusion-weld joints shall be made in accordance with the pipe and fitting manufacturer's specifications and product standards.
2. Fusion-weld tooling, welding machines, and electrofusion devices shall be as specified by the pipe and fittings manufacturer.
3. Prior to joining, the pipe and fittings shall be prepared in accordance with F 2389 and the manufacturer's specifications.
4. Joint preparation, setting and alignment, fusion process, cooling times and working pressure shall be in accordance with the pipe and fitting manufacturer's specifications.

3.5 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.

B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.

C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.

D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.

E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

- F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.6 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.
- E. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
- F. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
 - 1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
 - 2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.
- G. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

3.7 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections according to Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.8 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.
- B. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
 - 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
 - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
 - 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
 - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
 - 5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
 - 1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
 - 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
 - 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.

4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
 5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
 6. Prepare written report of testing.
- C. Perform the following before operating the system:
1. Open manual valves fully.
 2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
 3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
 4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
 5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
 6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
 7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

SECTION 232300 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-22:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 185 psig
 - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 325 psig
 - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 325 psig

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop based on manufacturer's test data.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
 - 1. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- B. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.7 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.

- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
 - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
 - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
 - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch long assembly.
 - 4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig
 - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F

2.2 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
 - 1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
 - 2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
 - 3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
 - 4. Seat: Nylon.
 - 5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
 - 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
 - 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F
- B. Packed-Angle Valves:
 - 1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
 - 2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
 - 3. Operator: Rising stem.
 - 4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
 - 5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
 - 6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
 - 7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
 - 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F
- C. Check Valves:
 - 1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
 - 2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
 - 3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
 - 4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
 - 5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
 - 6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
 - 7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig
 - 8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
 - 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F
- D. Service Valves:
 - 1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
 - 2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
 - 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 - 4. End Connections: Copper spring.
 - 5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
- E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with ARI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
 - 1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
 - 2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 - 4. End Connections: Threaded.
 - 5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24V ac coil.
 - 6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig
 - 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F
 - 8. Manual operator.
- F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
 - 1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
 - 2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Seat Disc: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 - 4. End Connections: Threaded.

- 5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig
- 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F
- G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.
 - 1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
 - 2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
 - 4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
 - 5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F
 - 6. Superheat: Adjustable
 - 7. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
 - 8. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig
- H. Straight-Type Strainers:
 - 1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
 - 2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
 - 3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 - 4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
 - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F
- I. Angle-Type Strainers:
 - 1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
 - 2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
 - 3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
 - 4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 - 5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
 - 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F
- J. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
 - 1. Body: Forged brass.
 - 2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
 - 3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
 - 4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
 - 5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 - 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
 - 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F
- K. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.
 - 1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
 - 2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
 - 3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina
 - 4. End Connections: Socket.
 - 5. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
 - 6. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig
 - 7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
 - 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F
- L. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.
 - 1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
 - 2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
 - 3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina
 - 4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
 - 5. End Connections: Socket.
 - 6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
 - 7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig
 - 8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
 - 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F
- M. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with ARI 495.
 - 1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
 - 2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
 - 3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig
 - 4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F

2.3 REFRIGERANTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Atofina Chemicals, Inc.
 - 2. DuPont Company; Fluorochemicals Div.
 - 3. Honeywell, Inc.; Genetron Refrigerants.
 - 4. INEOS Fluor Americas LLC.
 - 5. Pre-approved equal.
- B. ASHRAE 34, R-22: Monochlorodifluoromethane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.
- B. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.
- C. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.
- D. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.
 - 2. L drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at strainers if they are not an integral part of strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- E. Install a full-sized, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
 - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
 - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
 - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- H. Install safety relief valves where required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for device being protected:
 - 1. Solenoid valves.
 - 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 - 3. Compressor.

- K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, and in the suction line at the compressor.
- L. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Refer to Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and Section 230993 "Sequence and Operations for HVAC Controls" for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.
- K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- N. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- O. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- P. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- Q. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- R. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

- U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- B. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
 - 1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 - 2. Use Type BAG, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
 - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
 - 2. NPS 5/8 Maximum span, 60 inches minimum rod size, 1/4 inch
 - 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches minimum rod size, 1/4 inch
 - 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches minimum rod size, 3/8 inch .
 - 5. NPS 1-1/2 Maximum span, 96 inches minimum rod size, 3/8 inch
- D. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
 - 2. Test refrigerant piping and specialties. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
 - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
 - 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
 - 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
 - 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig .
 - 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
 - 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
 - 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
 - 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
 - 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
 - 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Low pressure rectangular ducts and fittings.
 - 2. Low pressure ductwork.
 - 3. Medium pressure ductwork.
 - 4. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
 - 5. Single-wall round ductwork.
 - 6. Double-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
 - 7. Double-wall round ductwork.
 - 8. Sheet metal materials.
 - 9. Duct liner.
 - 10. Sealants and gaskets.
 - 11. Hangers and supports.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
 - 1. Liners and adhesives.
 - 2. Sealants and gaskets.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
 - 3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
 - 4. Elevation of bottom of ducts.
 - 5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
 - 6. Fittings.
 - 7. Reinforcement and spacing.
 - 8. Seam and joint construction.
 - 9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
 - 10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
 - 11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
 - 12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.
- C. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Prerequisite IEQ 1: Documentation indicating that duct systems comply with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."
 - 2. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that duct systems comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
 - 3. Leakage Test Report for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation of work performed for compliance with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4.2.2 - "Duct Leakage Tests."
 - 4. Duct-Cleaning Test Report for Prerequisite IEQ 1: Documentation of work performed for compliance with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.4 - "Ventilation System Start-up."

5. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
6. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Duct materials other than the above is specified in the particular ductwork description.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be as indicated in the Duct Schedule.
- E. Carbon-Steel Sheets: ASTM A 366/A 366M, cold-rolled sheets; commercial quality; with oiled, exposed matte finish.

2.2 LOW PRESSURE RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995" based on 2" w.g. static-pressure class, Table 1-5.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995," Tables 1-10 through 1-13, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for 2" w.g. static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995."

- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995," Figure 1-5, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for 2" w.g. static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for 2" w.g. static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995."
 - 1. All elbows or offsets in rectangular ductwork under positive pressure shall contain turning vanes. Turning vanes in low pressure ductwork shall be single wall.
 - 2. All rectangular branch takeoffs in supply ductwork shall be of the 45 deg. entry design with a manual damper. Round take-offs in supply ductwork shall use rectangular to round transition with 45 degree entry design and a manual damper in the round, Sheet Metal Connectors H.E.T. (Hi-Efficiency Take-Off) or equal.

2.3 MEDIUM PRESSURE RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995" based on 4" w.g. static-pressure class, Table 1-5.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for 4" w.g. static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for 4" w.g. static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for 4" w.g. static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995."
 - 1. All elbows or offsets in rectangular ductwork that exceed 33 degrees shall contain turning vanes. Turning vanes in medium pressure ductwork shall be double wall.
 - 2. Rectangular branch take-offs shall be of the 45 deg. entry design as detailed in SMACNA "HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Second Edition-1995," Figure 2-6. Round branch take-offs or taps shall be of the conical or bellmouth design or 45 deg. rectangular to round entry design with sealer and mechanical fasteners used at tap connection. Round take-offs larger than duct height shall be of the 45 deg. entry design with a rectangular to round branch connections. The rectangular area shall be a minimum of 1-1/2 times the round branch area. Sealer shall be used at the branch connection.

2.4 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Low pressure round ducts shall be constructed per SMACNA HVAC Construction Standards, Table 3-2, 2" w.g. (pos.), Second Edition, 1995 with Addendum No. 1, for galvanized steel with grooved longitudinal seam and sleeved type transverse joint, pipe riveted. Hangers shall be 2" band, attached at duct joints with draw bands. Spiral duct and fittings per paragraph below may be used as an option.
- B. Round ducts in medium pressure systems and ahead of terminal boxes shall be of the continuous weld or continuous lock seam construction from ASTM A-527-67 galvanized steel. All round fittings shall be manufactured from galvanized steel with continuous welds or locked seams. Gasketed self-sealing spiral duct and fittings installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions may be used. All round ducts and fittings shall be equal constructed to the gauges called for in SMACNA HVAC Round Duct Construction Standards, Table 3-2, for spiral lock seam duct, 10" w.g., Second Edition, 1995 with Addendum No. 1.
- C. All exposed round ducts regardless of system pressure, shall be constructed as described in paragraph B above.
- D. All round ducts shall be sealed per SMACNA seal classification "B" requirements.

2.5 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - b. Johns Manville.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 2. Minimum Thermal Conductivity:
 - a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 4. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
 - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
 2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
 3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
 4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
 5. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
 6. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.

2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 4. Water resistant.
 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 2. Type: S.
 3. Grade: NS.
 4. Class: 25.
 5. Use: O.
 6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

E. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.

2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

E. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.

D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

H. Install ducts with a minimum clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOOD EXHAUST DUCT

- A. Install commercial kitchen hood exhaust ducts without dips and traps that may hold grease, and sloped a minimum of 2 percent to drain grease back to the hood.
- B. Install fire-rated access panel assemblies at each change in direction and at maximum intervals of 20 feet in horizontal ducts, and at every floor for vertical ducts, or as indicated on Drawings. Locate access panel on top or sides of duct a minimum of 1-1/2 inches from bottom of duct.
- C. Do not penetrate fire-rated assemblies except as allowed by applicable building codes and authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. All elbow or offsets exceeding 33 degrees shall utilize sweep/radius elbows with a centerline radius equal to or greater than the duct width.

3.4 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR DISHWASHER EXHAUST DUCT

- A. Solder ducts water tight. Install stainless steel damper with locking quadrant in the drops to the dishwasher. Ductwork shall be sloped to drain to the connection at the dirty dish end of the dishwasher.

3.5 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in ductwork schedule on drawings.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.8 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
 - 2. Test the following systems:
 - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - 3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
 - 4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
 - 5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
 - 6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
 - 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
 - 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
 - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

3.10 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - 1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
 - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
 - 1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
 - 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
 - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).

2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.11 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.12 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows.
- B. Refer to ductwork schedule on drawings.

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 233300 - DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Backdraft dampers.
 - 2. Volume dampers.
 - 3. Fire dampers.
 - 4. Smoke dampers.
 - 5. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
 - 6. Turning vanes.
 - 7. Duct-mounting access doors.
 - 8. Flexible connectors.
 - 9. Flexible ducts.
 - 10. Duct accessory hardware.
 - 11. Duct silencers.
- B. See "Fire Alarm" for duct-mounting fire and smoke detectors.
- C. See Division 23 Section "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls" for electric and pneumatic damper actuators.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Backdraft dampers.
 - 2. Volume dampers.
 - 3. Fire dampers.
 - 4. Ceiling fire dampers.
 - 5. Smoke dampers.
 - 6. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
 - 7. Turning vanes.
 - 8. Duct-mounting access doors.
 - 9. Flexible connectors.
 - 10. Flexible ducts.
 - 11. Duct Silencers.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Special fittings.
 - 2. Manual-volume damper installations.
 - 3. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, and combination fire- and smoke-damper installations, including sleeves and duct-mounting access doors.
 - 4. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Lock-forming quality; complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M and having G90 coating designation; ducts shall have mill-phosphatized finish for surfaces exposed to view.
- C. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 480/A 480M.
- D. Aluminum Sheets: ASTM B 209, alloy 3003, temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B 221, alloy 6063, temper T6.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Air Balance, Inc.
 - 2. American Warming and Ventilating.
 - 3. CESCO Products.
 - 4. Duro Dyne Corp.
 - 5. Greenheck.
 - 6. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
 - 7. Prefco Products, Inc.
 - 8. Ruskin Company.
 - 9. Vent Products Company, Inc.
 - 10. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Multiple-blade, parallel action gravity balanced, with center-pivoted blades of maximum 6-inch width, with sealed edges, assembled in rattle-free manner with 90-degree stop, steel ball bearings, and axles; adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
- C. Frame: 0.052-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners and mounting flange.
- D. Blades: 0.050-inch-thick aluminum sheet.
- E. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
- F. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
- G. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- H. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

2.4 VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Air Balance, Inc.
 - 2. American Warming and Ventilating.
 - 3. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - 4. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
 - 5. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - 6. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 7. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
 - 8. Ruskin Company.

9. Vent Products Company, Inc.
10. Greenheck Fan Corporation
11. Pre-approved equal.

- B. General Description: Factory fabricated, with required hardware and accessories. Stiffen damper blades for stability. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration. Close duct penetrations for damper components to seal duct consistent with pressure class.
- C. Standard Volume Dampers: Multiple- or single-blade, parallel- or opposed-blade design as indicated, standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 1. Steel Frames: Hat-shaped, galvanized sheet steel channels, minimum of 0.064 inch thick, with mitered and welded corners; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
 2. Roll-Formed Steel Blades: 0.064-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 3. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
 4. Bearings: Oil-impregnated bronze.
 5. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- D. Jackshaft: 1-inch-diameter, galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
 1. Length and Number of Mountings: Appropriate to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- E. Damper Hardware: Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.5 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Air Balance, Inc.
 2. CESCO Products.
 3. Greenheck.
 4. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
 5. METALAIR, Inc.
 6. Nailor Industries Inc.
 7. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
 8. Prefco Products, Inc.
 9. Ruskin Company.
 10. Vent Products Company, Inc.
 11. Ward Industries, Inc.
 12. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Fire dampers shall be labeled according to UL 555.
- C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours for dampers in walls rated 2-hours or less. 3 hour rating for dampers in walls rated greater than 2-hours.
- D. Frame: Low pressure applications (2" wg and less): curtain type with blades inside airstream; for ductwork constructed in higher pressure applications (above 2" wg): curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.138 inch thick and of length to suit application.
 2. Exceptions: Omit sleeve where damper frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor, and thickness of damper frame complies with sleeve requirements.
- F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- G. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.

- I. Fusible Links: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated.

2.6 SMOKE OR COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Air Balance, Inc.
 - 2. CESCO Products.
 - 3. Greenheck.
 - 4. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 5. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
 - 6. Ruskin Company.
 - 7. Pre-approved equal
- B. General Description: Labeled according to UL 555S. Combination fire and smoke dampers shall be labeled according to UL 555 for 1-1/2-hour rating.
- C. Fusible Links: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated.
- D. Frame and Blades: 0.064-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.052-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.
- F. Damper Motors: Modulating and two-position action.
 - 1. Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
 - 2. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
 - 3. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outside-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
 - 4. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
 - 5. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

2.7 TURNING VANES

- A. Fabricate to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for vanes and vane runners. Vane runners shall automatically align vanes.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes: Fabricate 1-1/2-inch-wide, double-vane, curved blades of galvanized sheet steel set 3/4 inch o.c.; support with bars perpendicular to blades set 2 inches o.c.; and set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - b. Duro Dyne Corp.
 - c. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - d. Ward Industries, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- C. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

2.8 DUCT-MOUNTING ACCESS DOORS

- A. General Description: Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
- B. Door: Double wall, duct mounting, and rectangular; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class. Include vision panel where indicated. Include 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Warming and Ventilating.
 - b. CESCO Products.
 - c. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - d. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - e. Greenheck.

- f. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
 - g. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - h. Ventfabrics, Inc.
 - i. Ward Industries, Inc.
 - j. Elgen Manufacturing
 - k. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
- 3. Provide number of hinges and locks as follows:
 - a. Less Than 12 Inches Square: Secure with two sash locks.
 - b. Up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
 - c. Up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
 - d. Sizes 24 by 48 Inches and Larger: One additional hinge.
- C. Door: Double wall, duct mounting, and round; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and 1-inch thickness. Include cam latches.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - b. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with spin-in notched frame.
- D. Seal around frame attachment to duct and door to frame with neoprene or foam rubber.
- E. Insulation: 1-inch-thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Duro Dyne Corp.
 - 3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
 - 4. Ward Industries, Inc.
 - 5. Pre-approved equal.
- B. General Description: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics, coatings, and adhesives complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

2.10 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - 2. Thermaflex.
 - 3. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
 - 4. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Insulated-Duct Connectors: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor barrier film.
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
- C. Flexible Duct Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action, in sizes 3 through 18 inches to suit duct size.

2.11 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct insulation thickness.

- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

2.12 DUCT SILENCERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Industrial Acoustics Company.
 2. Vibroacoustics.
 3. Pre-approved equal.
- B. General Requirements:
1. Furnish and install "Quiet-Duct" (rectangular) silencers of the types and sizes shown on the plans and/or listed in the schedule. Silencers shall be the product of Industrial Acoustics Company. Any specification change must be submitted in writing and approved by the Architect/Engineer, in writing, at least 10 days prior to the bid due-date.
- C. Materials:
1. Outer casings of rectangular silencers shall be made of 22 gauge type #G-90 lock-former-quality galvanized steel.
 2. Interior partitions for rectangular silencers shall be not less than 26 gauge type #G-90 galvanized lock-former-quality perforated steel.
 3. Filler material shall be inorganic glass fiber of a proper density to obtain the specified acoustic performance and be packed under not less than 5% compression to eliminate voids due to vibration and settling. Material shall be inert, vermin- and moisture-proof.
 4. Combustion ratings for the silencer acoustic fill shall be not greater than the following when tested to ASTM E 84, NFPA Standard 255, or UL No. 723:
 - a. Flamespread Classification: 20.
 - b. Smoke Development Rating: 20.
- D. Construction:
1. Units shall be constructed in accordance with the ASHRAE Guide recommendations for high pressure duct work. Seams shall be lock formed and mastic filled. Rectangular casing seams shall be in the corners of the silencer shell to provide maximum unit strength and rigidity. Interior partitions shall be fabricated from single-piece, margin-perforated sheets and shall have die-formed entrance and exit shapes so as to provide the maximum aerodynamic efficiency and minimum self-noise characteristics in the sound attenuator. Blunt noses or squared off partitions will not be accepted.
 2. Attachment of the interior partitions to the casing shall be by means of an interlocking track assembly. Tracks shall be solid galvanized steel and shall be welded to the outer casing. Attachment of the interior partitions to the tracks shall be such that a minimum of 4 thicknesses of metal exist at this location. The track assembly shall stiffen the exterior casing, provide a reinforced attachment detail for the interior partitions, and shall maintain a uniform airspace width along the length of the silencer for consistent aerodynamic and acoustic performance. Interior partitions shall be additionally secured to the outer casing with welded nose clips at both ends of the sound attenuator.
 3. Sound attenuating units shall not fail structurally when subjected to a differential air pressure of 8 inches water gauge from inside to outside the casing. Airtight construction shall be provided by use of a duct sealing compound on the job-site material and labor furnished by the contractor.
- E. Acoustic Performance:
1. All silencer ratings shall be determined in a duct-to-reverberant room test facility which provides for airflow in both directions through the test silencer in accordance with ASTM Specification E477-99. The test facility shall be NVLAP accredited for the ASTM E477-99 test standard. Data from a non-accredited laboratory will not be acceptable. The test set-up and procedure shall be such that all effects due to end reflection, directivity, flanking transmission, standing waves and test chamber sound absorption are eliminated. Acoustic ratings shall include Dynamic Insertion Loss (DIL) and Self-Noise (SN) Power Levels both for FORWARD FLOW (air and noise in same direction) and REVERSE FLOW (air and noise in opposite directions) with airflow of at least 2000 fpm entering face velocity. Data for rectangular and tubular type silencers shall be presented for tests conducted using silencers no smaller than the following cross-sections:
 - a. Rectangular, inch: 24x24, 24x30, or 24x36.
 - b. Tubular, inch: 12, 24, 36, and 48.
- F. Aerodynamic Performance:
1. Static pressure loss of silencers shall not exceed 0.05" wg. Airflow measurements shall be made in accordance with ASTM specification E477-99 and applicable portions of ASME, AMCA, and ADC airflow test codes. Tests shall be reported on the identical units for which acoustic data is presented.

- G. Certification:
1. With submittals, the manufacturer shall supply certified test data on Dynamic Insertion Loss, Self-Noise Power Levels, and Aerodynamic Performance for Reverse and Forward Flow test conditions. Test data shall be for a standard product. All rating tests shall be conducted in the same facility, shall utilize the same silencer, and shall be open to inspection upon request from the Architect/Engineer.
- H. Duct Transitions:
1. When transitions are required to adapt silencer dimensions to connecting duct work they shall be furnished by the installing contractor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION AND INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Provide duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers on exhaust fans or exhaust ducts nearest to outside and where indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers in ducts with liner; avoid damage to and erosion of duct liner.
- E. Provide balancing dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches lead from larger ducts as required for air balancing. Install at a minimum of two duct widths from branch takeoff.
- F. Provide test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers, with fusible links, according to manufacturer's UL-approved written instructions.
- H. Install duct access doors to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and terminal units as follows:
1. On both sides of duct coils.
 2. Downstream from volume dampers and equipment.
 3. Adjacent to fire or smoke dampers, providing access to reset or reinstall fusible links.
 4. To interior of ducts for cleaning; before and after each change in direction, at maximum 50-foot spacing.
 5. On sides of ducts where adequate clearance is available.
- I. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, rectangular access doors:
1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
 6. Body Plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- J. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, round access doors:
1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 inches in diameter.
 2. Two-Hand Access: 10 inches in diameter.
 3. Head and Hand Access: 12 inches in diameter.
 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 18 inches in diameter.
 5. Body Access: 24 inches in diameter.
- K. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "HVAC System Identification."
- L. Install flexible connectors immediately adjacent to equipment in ducts associated with fans and motorized equipment supported by vibration isolators.
- M. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to low pressure ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

N. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.

O. Install duct test holes where indicated and required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust duct accessories for proper settings.

B. Adjust fire and smoke dampers for proper action.

C. Final positioning of manual-volume dampers is specified in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing."

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233416 - CENTRIFUGAL HVAC FANS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. In-line centrifugal fans.
 - 2. Centrifugal roof ventilators

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated and include the following:
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and maintenance data.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. NEMA Compliance: Motors and electrical accessories shall comply with NEMA standards.
- C. UL Standard: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck.
 - 2. Loren Cook Company.
 - 3. Twin City Fan
 - 4. PennBarry
 - 5. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: In-line, direct- or belt-driven, as scheduled, centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, outlet guide vanes, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, mounting brackets, and accessories.
- C. Housing: Inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.
- D. Direct-Driven Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing; with wheel, inlet cone, and motor.
- E. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.
- F. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.
- G. Accessories:
 - 1. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
 - 2. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
 - 3. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.

2.2 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck.
 - 2. Loren Cook Company.
 - 3. Twin City Fan.
 - 4. PennBarry.
 - 5. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Direct- or belt-driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, curb base, and accessories.
- C. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle or upblast as scheduled; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
 - 1. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.
- D. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- E. Belt-Driven Drive Assembly: Resiliently mounted to housing, with the following features:
 - 1. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 - 2. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 - 3. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
 - 4. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- F. Accessories:
 - 1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted outside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 - 2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 - 3. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
- G. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
 - 1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
 - 2. Overall Height: 12 inches.
 - 3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
 - 4. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.
 - 5. Mounting Pedestal: Galvanized steel with removable access panel.
 - 6. Vented Curb: Unlined with louvered vents in vertical sides.

2.3 MOTORS

- A. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Support units using elastomeric mounts having a static deflection of 1 inch.
 - 1. Secure vibration controls to concrete bases using anchor bolts cast in concrete base.
- C. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
- D. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and elastomeric hangers having a static deflection of 1 inch.
- E. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- F. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Mechanical Identification."

- G. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories."
- H. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- I. Ground equipment according to Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- J. Connect wiring according to Section "Conductors and Cables."
- K. Install units on curbs per manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 - 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 - 5. Adjust belt tension.
 - 6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 - 7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 - 8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 - 9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
 - 10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
 - 11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- B. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

END OF SECTION 233416

SECTION 233600 - AIR TERMINAL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Modulating, single-duct air terminal units.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of air terminal unit.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for air terminal units.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air terminal units.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 4. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, indicating the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
 - b. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a Qualified Electrical Testing Laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Section 6 - Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning."

2.2 MODULATING, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Price Industries Limited.
 - 2. Titus; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Global Products.
 - 3. Trane.
- B. Description: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.

- C. Casing: Minimum 20-gauge- thick galvanized steel.
 - 1. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
 - 2. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
 - 3. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
- D. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
 - 1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
- E. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity inlet sensors.
- F. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free of expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in a galvanized-steel housing; with primary automatic, and secondary manual, reset thermal cutouts. Terminate elements in stainless steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless steel hardware. Provide electric-resistance heating coils for air terminal units scheduled on Drawings.
 - 1. SCR controlled.
 - 2. Access door interlocked disconnect switch.
 - 3. Downstream air temperature sensor with local connection to override discharge-air temperature to not exceed a maximum temperature set point (adjustable).
 - 4. Nickel chrome 80/20 heating elements.
 - 5. Airflow switch for proof of airflow.
 - 6. Fan interlock contacts.
 - 7. Fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection (for coils of more than 48 A).
- G. Direct Digital Controls:
 - 1. Terminal Unit Controller: Pressure-independent, VAV controller and integrated actuator, and electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes.
 - a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
 - b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
 - c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
 - d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
 - 2. Room Sensor: Wall mounted with temperature set-point adjustment and access for connection of portable operator terminal.
 - 3. Terminal Unit Controller, Section 230923: Controller is to be factory mounted and wired by air terminal manufacturer; unit controllers, integrated actuators, and room sensors to be furnished under Section 230923 "Direct Digital Controls (DDC) for HVAC."
- H. Control Sequence: See Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operation for HVAC" for control sequences.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI 880: Test and rate assembled air terminal units in accordance with AHRI 880.
- B. Water Coils: Factory pressure test to 300 psig in accordance with AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for hangers and supports.
- B. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A.
- C. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.
- D. Install wall-mounted thermostats.

3.2 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for connecting ducts to air terminal units.

- B. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install field power to each air terminal unit electrical power connection. Coordinate with air terminal unit manufacturer and installers.
- B. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- E. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Label each air terminal unit with drawing designation, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, and coil type. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
 - 3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
 - 4. Verify that control connections are complete.
 - 5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
 - 6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air terminal unit testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

END OF SECTION 233600

SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes ceiling, wall and floor-mounted diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate Drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 GRILLES, DIFFUSERS AND REGISTERS

- A. See schedule on the drawings.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Krueger.
 - b. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
 - c. Price Industries.
 - d. Titus.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practicable. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713

SECTION 236200 - PACKAGED COMPRESSOR AND CONDENSER UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Compressor and condenser units, air cooled, 6 to 120 tons (21 to 422 kW).

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each compressor and condenser unit.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 2. Include equipment dimensions, weights and structural loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- B. Shop Drawings: For compressor and condenser units.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For compressor and condenser units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."
- B. Coordinate location of piping and electrical rough-ins.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of compressor and condenser units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Compressor failure.
 - b. Condenser coil leak.
 - 2. Warranty Period (Compressor Only): 10> years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 3. Warranty Period (Components Other Than Compressor): Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fabricate and label refrigeration system in accordance with ASHRAE 15 and ASHRAE 34.

- B. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6, "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 COMPRESSOR AND CONDENSER UNITS, AIR COOLED, 6 TO 120 TONS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Trane.
 - 2. Daikin Applied.
 - 3. York, a Johnson Controls Company.
 - 4. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Factory assembled and tested, air cooled; consisting of casing, compressors, condenser coils, condenser fans and motors, and unit controls.
- C. Compressor:
 - 1. Hermetic scroll compressor designed for service with crankcase sight glass, crankcase heater, and backseating service access valves on suction and discharge ports.
 - a. Capacity Control: Hot-gas bypass.
- D. Refrigerant: R-410A.
- E. Condenser Coil: Seamless copper-tube or aluminum microchannel-tube, aluminum-fin coil, including subcooling circuit and backseating liquid-line service access valve.
 - 1. Factory pressure test coils, then dehydrate by drawing a vacuum and fill with a holding charge of nitrogen or refrigerant.
 - 2. Provide factory-applied phenolic anti-corrosion coating to assembled coil.
- F. Condenser Fans: Propeller-type vertical discharge; either directly or belt driven. Include the following:
 - 1. Permanently lubricated, ball-bearing motors.
 - 2. Separate motor for each fan.
 - 3. Dynamically and statically balanced fan assemblies.
- G. Operating and safety controls include the following:
 - 1. Manual-reset, high-pressure cutout switches.
 - 2. Automatic-reset, low-pressure cutout switches.
 - 3. Low-oil-pressure cutout switch.
 - 4. Compressor-winding thermostat cutout switch.
 - 5. Three-leg, compressor-overload protection.
 - 6. Control transformer.
 - 7. Magnetic contactors for compressor and condenser fan motors.
 - 8. Timer to prevent excessive compressor cycling.
- H. Accessories:
 - 1. Electronic programmable thermostat to control compressor and condenser unit and its associated evaporator fan.
 - 2. Low-Ambient Controller:
 - a. Cycles condenser fan to permit operation down to 0 deg F with time-delay relay to bypass low-pressure switch.
 - 3. Gauge Panel: Package with refrigerant circuit suction and discharge gauges.
 - 4. Hot-gas bypass kit.
 - 5. Part-winding-start timing relay, circuit breakers, and contactors.
 - 6. 115 V ac convenience, ground-fault circuit interrupter receptacle in weatherproof enclosure.
- I. Unit Casings: Designed for outdoor installation with weather protection for components and controls and with removable panels for required access to compressors, controls, condenser fans, motors, and drives. Additional features include the following:
 - 1. Steel, galvanized or zinc coated, for exposed casing surfaces; treated and finished with manufacturer's standard paint coating.
 - 2. Perimeter base rail with forklift slots and lifting holes to facilitate rigging.
 - 3. Gasketed control panel door.

4. Condenser coil grille.

J. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Refer to schedule on drawings.

2.3 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Performance Ratings: Certify capacity performance ratings of compressor and condenser units in accordance with AHRI 340/360.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of compressor and condenser units.

B. Examine roughing-in for refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

C. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where compressor and condenser units will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install units level and plumb, firmly anchored in locations indicated.

B. Install roof-mounting units on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."

C. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.

D. Loose Components: Install piping specialties, electrical components, devices, and accessories that are not factory mounted.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping". Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect refrigerant piping to air-cooled compressor and condenser units; maintain required access to unit. Install furnished field-mounted accessories. Refrigerant piping and specialties are specified in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping."

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
 - a. Inspect for physical damage to unit casing.
 - b. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
 - c. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
 - d. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
 - e. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
 - f. Verify that controls are connected and operational.
- B. Start unit in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and complete manufacturer's startup checklist.
- C. Measure and record airflow and air temperature rise over coils.
- D. Verify operation of condenser capacity control device.
- E. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections prevent vibration transmission to structure.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Compressor and condenser units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain compressor and condenser units.

END OF SECTION 236200

SECTION 237313.13 - INDOOR, BASIC AIR-HANDLING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Indoor, basic air-handling units.
 - 2. Unit casings.
 - 3. Fan, drive, and motor section.
 - 4. Coil section.
 - 5. Air filtration section.
 - 6. Dampers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
 - 4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
 - 5. Fans:
 - a. Include certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - b. Include certified fan-sound power ratings.
 - c. Include fan construction and accessories.
 - d. Include motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
 - 6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
 - 8. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type and configuration of indoor, basic, air-handling unit.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Detail fabrication and assembly of indoor, basic air-handling units, as well as procedures and diagrams.
 - 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Startup service reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.
3. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of indoor, basic, air-handling units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than one year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

2.2 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Refer to schedule on drawings.

2.3 INDOOR, BASIC AIR-HANDLING UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Daikin Applied.
 2. Trane.
 3. Aeon.
- B. Unit Casings:
 1. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings:
 - a. Forming: Form walls, roofs, and floors with at least two breaks at each joint.
 - b. Joints: Sheet metal screws or pop rivets.
 - c. Sealing: Seal all joints with water-resistant sealant. Hermetically seal at each corner and around entire perimeter.
 - d. Base Rail:
 - 1) Material: Galvanized steel.
 - 2) Height: 4 inches.
 2. Single-Wall Construction:
 - a. Material: Galvanized steel with manufacturer's standard finish.
 - b. Floor Plate: Galvanized steel, minimum 18 gauge thick.
 - c. Insulation and Adhesive:
 - 1) Materials: ASTM C1071, Type I or Type II glass-fiber blanket or board insulation, neoprene coated or foil faced.
 - 2) Insulation Thickness: 1 inch.
 - 3) Thermal Break: Provide continuity of insulation with no through-casing metal in casing walls, floors, or roofs of air-handling unit.
 - 4) Location and Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of all complete unit.
 - a) Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C916, Type I.
 - b) Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, or mechanical attachment, to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
 3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream are to comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

4. Static-Pressure Classifications:
 - a. For Unit Sections Upstream of Fans: Minus 3-inch wg.
 - b. For Unit Sections Downstream and Including Fans: 3-inch wg.
5. Panels and Doors:
 - a. Panels:
 - 1) Fabrication: Formed and reinforced with same materials and insulation thickness as casing.
 - 2) Fasteners: Two or more camlock type for panel lift-out operation. Arrangement is to allow panels to be opened against airflow.
 - 3) Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
 - 4) Size: Large enough to allow unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components. At least 18 inches wide by full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 60 inches.
 - b. Locations and Applications:
 - 1) Fan Section: Panels.
 - 2) Coil Section: Panels.
 - 3) Access Section: Panels.
 - 4) Access Sections Immediately Upstream and Downstream of Coil Sections: Panels.
 - 5) Damper Section: Panels.
 - 6) Filter Section: Panels large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of filters.
 - 7) Mixing Section: Panels.
6. Condensate Drain Pans:
 - a. Location: Each type of cooling coil.
 - b. Construction:
 - 1) Single-wall, galvanized-steel or noncorrosive polymer sheet.
 - c. Drain Connection:
 - 1) Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
 - d. Slope: Minimum 0.125 in./ft. slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
 - e. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face.
 - f. Width: Entire width of water producing device.
 - g. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.

C. Fan, Drive, and Motor Section:

1. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.
2. Fans: Centrifugal, galvanized steel; mounted on solid-steel shaft.
 - a. Shafts: With field-adjustable alignment.
 - 1) Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway.
 - b. Shaft Bearings:
 - 1) Heavy-duty, self-aligning, pillow-block type with an L-50 rated life of minimum 100,000 hours in accordance with ABMA 9.
 - c. Housings: Formed- and reinforced-steel panels to form curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff and spun-metal inlet bell.
 - 1) Bracing: Steel angle or channel supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
 - d. Housings, Plenum Fans: Steel frame and panel; fabricated without fan scroll and volute housing. Provide inlet screens for Type SWSI fans.
 - e. Forward-Curved, Centrifugal Fan Wheels: Inlet flange, backplate, and shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow and mechanically fastened to flange and backplate; steel hub swaged to backplate and fastened to shaft with setscrews.
 - f. Mounting: For internal vibration isolation. Factory-mount fans with manufacturer's standard vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static deflection of 1 inch.
 - g. Shaft Lubrication Lines: Extended to a location outside the casing.
3. Drive, Belt: Factory-mounted, V-belt drive, with adjustable alignment and belt tensioning, and with 1.5 service factor based on fan motor.
 - a. Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing, dynamically balanced at the factory.
 - b. Belts: Oil resistant, non-sparking and nonstatic; in matched sets for multiple-belt drives.
 - c. Belt Guards: Comply with requirements specified by OSHA and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards"; 0.146-inch-thick, 3/4-inch diamond-mesh wire screen, welded to steel angle frame; prime coated.
4. Motors:
 - a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC."

- b. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - c. Efficiency: Premium efficient as defined in NEMA MG 1.
 - d. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with 5-hp motors and smaller; fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp. Select pulley size so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
 - e. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
5. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Serving each fan individually.
- a. Manufactured Units: Pulse-width modulated; constant torque and variable torque for inverter-duty motors.
 - b. Output Rating: Three phase; 10 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range; maximum voltage equals input voltage.
 - c. Unit Operating Requirements:
 - 1) Internal Adjustability:
 - a) Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
 - b) Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
 - c) Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
 - d) Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds.
 - e) Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.
 - 2) Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
 - a) Surge suppression.
 - b) Loss of input signal protection.
 - c) Under- and overvoltage trips.
 - d) Variable-frequency motor controller and motor-overload/overtemperature protection.
 - e) Critical frequency rejection.
 - f) Loss-of-phase protection.
 - g) Reverse-phase protection.
 - h) Motor-overtemperature fault.
 - 3) Bidirectional autospeed search.
 - 4) Torque boost.
 - 5) Motor temperature compensation at slow speeds.
 - a) Panel-mounted operator station.
 - b) Historical logging information and displays.
 - c) Digital indicating devices.
 - 6) Control Signal Interface: Electric.
 - 7) Proportional Integral Directive (PID) control interface.
 - 8) DDC system for HVAC Protocols for Network Communications: ASHRAE 135.
 - d. Line Conditioning:
 - 1) Input line conditioning.
 - 2) Output filtering.
 - 3) EMI/RFI filtering.

D. Coil Section:

- 1. General Requirements for Coil Section:
 - a. Comply with AHRI 410.
 - b. Fabricate coil section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).
 - c. Coils are not to act as structural component of unit.
- 2. Preheat Coils:
 - a. Electrical Coils: Comply with UL 1995.
 - 1) Casing Assembly: Slip-in type with galvanized-steel frame.
 - 2) Open Heating Elements: Resistance wire of 80 percent nickel and 20 percent chromium supported and insulated by floating ceramic bushings recessed into casing openings, fastened to supporting brackets, and mounted in galvanized-steel frame.
 - 3) Overtemperature Protection: Disk-type, automatically resetting, thermal-cutout, safety device; serviceable through terminal box without removing heater from coil section.
 - 4) Secondary Protection: Load-carrying, manually resetting or manually replaceable, thermal cutouts; factory wired in series with each heater stage.
 - 5) Control Panel: Unit mounted with disconnecting means and overcurrent protection.
 - a) Magnetic contactor.
 - b) Solid-state, stepless pulse controller.
 - c) Toggle switches, one per step.
 - d) Step controller.
 - e) Time-delay relay.

- f) Pilot lights, one per step.
 - g) Airflow proving switch.
 - 3. Cooling Coils:
 - a. Refrigerant Coil:
 - 1) Tubes: Copper.
 - 2) Fins:
 - a) Material: Aluminum.
 - 3) Fin and Tube Joints: Mechanical bond.
 - 4) Headers: Seamless-copper headers with brazed connections.
 - 5) Frames: Galvanized steel.
 - 6) Coatings: None.
 - 7) Ratings: Designed, tested, and rated in accordance with ASHRAE 33 and AHRI 410.
 - a) Working Pressure: Minimum 300 psig.
- E. Air Filtration Section:
 - 1. Particulate air filtration is specified in Section 234100 "Particulate Air Filtration."
 - 2. Panel Filters:
 - a. Description: Pleated factory-fabricated, self-supported disposable air filters with holding frames.
 - b. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
 - c. Media: Interlaced glass, synthetic, or cotton fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive and antimicrobial coating.
 - d. Filter-Media Frame: High wet-strength beverage board with perforated metal retainer, or metal grid, on outlet side.
 - 3. Side-Access Filter Mounting Frames:
 - a. Particulate Air Filter Frames: Match inner casing and outer casing material, and insulation thickness. Galvanized steel track.
 - 1) Sealing: Incorporate positive-sealing device to ensure seal between gasketed material on channels to seal top and bottom of filter cartridge frames to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.
- F. Dampers:
 - 1. Outdoor- and Return-Air Dampers: Low-leakage, double-skin, airfoil-blade, galvanized-steel dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals in opposed-blade arrangement with steel operating rods rotating in sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel frame, and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Leakage rate is not to exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and 8 cfm/sq. ft. at 4-inch wg.
 - 2. Electronic Damper Operators:
 - a. Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
 - b. Electronic damper position indicator is to have visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
 - c. Operator Motors:
 - 1) Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC."
 - 2) Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
 - 3) Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
 - d. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
 - e. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
 - f. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism with external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
 - g. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F.
 - h. Run Time: 30 seconds.
 - 3. Mixing Section: Multiple-blade, air-mixer assembly located immediately downstream of mixing section.
 - 4. Combination Filter and Mixing Section:
 - a. Cabinet support members are to hold 2-inch-thick, pleated, flat, permanent or throwaway filters.
- G. Materials:
 - 1. Steel:
 - a. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
 - b. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.
 - 2. Stainless Steel:
 - a. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.

- b. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.
- 3. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- 4. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI 430 Certification: Test, rate, and label air-handling units and their components in accordance with AHRI 430.
- B. AHRI 260 or AMCA 311 Sound Performance Rating Certification: Test, rate, and label in accordance with AHRI 260 or AMCA 311.
- C. Fan Aerodynamic Performance Rating: Factory test and rate fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency in accordance with AMCA 210.
- D. Fan Energy Index (FEI): Test in accordance with AMCA 210 and rate in accordance with AMCA 99, AMCA 207, and AMCA 208.
- E. Fan Operating Limits: Classify fans in accordance with AMCA 99, Section 14.
- F. Refrigerant Coils: Factory tested to minimum 450-psig internal pressure, and to minimum 300-psig internal pressure while underwater, in accordance with AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Replace with new insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for steam, hydronic, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR, BASIC AIR-HANDLING UNITS

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install air-handling units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.
- C. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.
- D. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to air-handling unit, allow for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.

- D. Connect condensate drain pans using, ASTM B88, Type M copper tubing. Extend to nearest equipment or floor drain. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- E. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each supply and return connection.

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
 - 1. Nameplate is to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
 - 4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations. Reconnect fan drive system, align belts, and install belt guards.
 - 5. Verify that bearings, pulleys, belts, and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.
 - 6. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.
 - 7. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
 - 8. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.
 - 9. Install new, clean filters.
 - 10. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.
- B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:
 - 1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design conditions.
 - 2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
 - 3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing of air-handling unit and air-distribution systems, and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
 - 2. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Air-handling unit and components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.
 - 4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION 237313.13

SECTION 238123.18 - COMPUTER-ROOM, RACK-COOLING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Computer-room, rack-cooling equipment.
 - 2. Fan module.
 - 3. Refrigerant.
 - 4. Motors.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. COP: Coefficient of performance.
- B. EER: Energy efficiency ratio.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for computer-room, rack-cooling equipment.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For central refrigeration units and rack-cooling units.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, elevations, and other details, drawn to scale, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For computer-room, rack-cooling equipment to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fan: One.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of computer-room, rack-cooling equipment that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER-ROOM, RACK-COOLING EQUIPMENT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. APC by Schneider Electric.
 - 2. Liebert; Vertiv Holdings Co.
 - 3. Schneider.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
 - 2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - "Ventilation Rate Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label water-cooled condenser shell to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," Division 1.

2.3 HORIZONTALLY MOUNTED RACK-COOLING MODULE

- A. Description: Packaged, factory assembled, prewired, and prepiped; consisting of cabinet cooling coil and controls.
- B. Cabinet and Frame: Powder-painted cabinet, hinged doors, and welded tubular steel frame.
- C. Cooling Coil: Aluminum microchannel with drip pan.
- D. Electrical Components:
 - 1. Each module shall be equipped with two sets of two 10-foot power cords with automatic switching, primary and secondary, attached with IEC connectors to the rear of the unit.
 - 2. Each cord shall have a NEMA 5-15P (IEC 320-C14) plug at the end.
 - 3. CE-listed version of the unit shall have permanently attached power cords.
- E. Refrigerant Piping: ACR copper tubing with brazed joints. Factory-installed piping shall be leak tested and pressure tested prior to shipment from the factory. Factory-supplied pipe connections for field piping.
- F. Discharge Diffusers: Mounted on the unit front, discharging to one or both sides.
- G. Control System:
 - 1. Factory-installed control boards and condensate detection for the drip pan.
 - 2. Module with connection points (dry contacts) in the electrical box for connection of outgoing alarm cables for condensate detection, fan failure, and remote shutdown.
- H. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Refer to schedule on drawings.

2.4 REFRIGERANT

- A. Refrigerant Type: R-134A.

2.5 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load does not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for refrigeration piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where units will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Layout and install computer-room rack-cooling equipment and suspension system coordinated with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.
- B. Install computer-room, rack-cooling equipment level and plumb, maintaining manufacturer's recommended clearances.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to computer-room rack-cooling equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Refrigerant Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Provide shutoff valves and piping.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Computer-room, rack-cooling equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain computer-room, rack-cooling equipment.

END OF SECTION 238123.18

SECTION 238239 - CABINET UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cabinet unit heaters with centrifugal fans and hot-water coils.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include location and size of each field connection.
 - 4. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
 - 5. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
 - 6. Indicate location and arrangement of piping valves and specialties.
 - 7. Indicate location and arrangement of integral controls.
 - 8. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Structural members to which cabinet unit heaters will be attached.
 - 3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - 6. Perimeter moldings for exposed or partially exposed cabinets.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Qmark
 - 2. Raywall

2.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested unit complying with AHRI 440.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

2.4 COIL SECTION INSULATION

- A. Insulation Materials: ASTM C 1071; surfaces exposed to airstream shall have aluminum-foil facing to prevent erosion of glass fibers.
 - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch
 - 2. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - 3. Fire-Hazard Classification: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 - 4. Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916 and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - 5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

2.5 CABINETS

- A. Material: Steel with baked-enamel finish with manufacturer's standard paint, in color selected by Architect.
 - 1. Vertical Unit, Exposed Front Panels: Minimum 0.0677-inch thick galvanized sheet steel, removable panels with channel-formed edges secured with tamperproof cam fasteners.
 - 2. Horizontal Unit, Exposed Bottom Panels: Minimum 0.0677-inch thick galvanized sheet steel, removable panels secured with tamperproof cam fasteners and safety chain.
 - 3. Recessed Flanges: Steel, finished to match cabinet.
 - 4. Control Access Door: Key operated.
 - 5. Base: Minimum 0.0677-inch thick steel, finished to match cabinet, 4 high with leveling bolts.
 - 6. Extended Piping Compartment: 8-inch wide piping end pocket.
 - 7. False Back: Minimum 0.0428-inch thick steel, finished to match cabinet.

2.6 HEATING COIL

- A. Electric-Resistance Heating Coil: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and 60-Hz hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in steel or corrosion-resistant metallic sheath with fins no closer than 0.16 inch. Element ends shall be enclosed in terminal box. Fin surface temperature shall not exceed 550 deg F at any point during normal operation.
 - 1. Circuit Protection: One-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection and limit controls for high-temperature protection of heaters.
 - 2. Wiring Terminations: Stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant material.

2.7 CONTROLS

- A. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.
 - 1. Fan: Forward curved, high static, double width, centrifugal, directly connected to motor; thermoplastic or painted-steel wheels and aluminum, painted-steel, or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
 - 2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed; resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 3. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
- C. Basic Unit Controls:
 - 1. Control voltage transformer.
 - 2. Wall mounted thermostat with the following features:
 - a. Heat-off switch.
 - b. Fan on-auto switch.
 - c. Manual fan-speed switch.
 - d. Adjustable deadband.
 - e. Concealed set point.

f. Concealed indication.

A. Electrical Connection: Factory-wired motors and controls for a single field connection.

2.8 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

A. As scheduled on drawings.

2.9 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive cabinet unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

2.10 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall boxes in finished wall assembly; seal and weatherproof. Joint-sealant materials and applications are specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

B. Install cabinet unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.

C. Suspend cabinet unit heaters from structure with elastomeric hangers.

D. Install wall-mounted thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.

E. Install new filters in each fan-coil unit within two weeks of Substantial Completion.

2.11 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping," Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect supply and return ducts to cabinet unit heaters with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

D. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995.

E. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and gate or ball valve on supply-water connection and union and calibrated balancing valve on return-water connection of cabinet unit heater. Hydronic specialties are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping".

F. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

G. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

2.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.

2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 238239

SECTION 260010 - SUPPLEMENTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Supplemental requirements generally applicable to the Work specified in Division 26. This Section is also referenced by related Work specified in other Divisions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Construction Manager's written permission.
- B. Arrange to provide temporary electrical power in accordance with requirements specified in Division 01.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTION LIMITATIONS FOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Substitution requests for electrical equipment will be entertained under the following conditions:
 - 1. Substitution requests may be submitted for consideration prior to the Electrical Preconstruction Conference if accompanied by value analysis data indicating that substitution will comply with Project performance requirements while significantly increasing value for Owner throughout life of facility.
 - 2. Substitution requests may be submitted for consideration concurrently with submission of power system study reports when those reports indicate that substitution is necessary for safety of maintenance personnel and facility occupants.
 - 3. Contractor is responsible for sequencing and scheduling power system studies and electrical equipment procurement. After the Electrical Preconstruction Conference, insufficient lead time for electrical equipment delivery will not be considered a valid reason for substitution.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF ELECTRICAL WORK

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in the Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 1 for installation of Work specified in Division 26. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

3.2 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Training:
 - 1. With assistance from factory-authorized service representatives, train Owner's maintenance personnel on the following topics:
 - a. How to adjust, operate, and maintain equipment specified in Section 263213.13 "Diesel-Engine-Driven Generator Sets."
 - 2. Provide video recordings of training sessions to Owner.

END OF SECTION 260010

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
 - 2. Aluminum building wire rated 600 V or less.
 - 3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
 - 4. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
 - 5. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.
 - 3. Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cabling used for voice and data circuits.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. Alpha Wire; brand of Belden, Inc.
 - 2. Belden Inc.
 - 3. Cerro Wire LLC.
 - 4. Encore Wire Corporation.
 - 5. General Cable; Prysmian Group North America.
 - 6. Okonite Company (The).
 - 7. Service Wire Co.
 - 8. Southwire Company, LLC.
 - 9. WESCO.
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
 - 2. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 3. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
 - 4. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

2.2 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn aluminum current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. Alpha Wire; brand of Belden, Inc.
 - 2. Belden Inc.
 - 3. Cerro Wire LLC.
 - 4. Encore Wire Corporation.
 - 5. General Cable; Prysmian Group North America.
 - 6. Okonite Company (The).
 - 7. Southwire Company, LLC.
 - 8. WESCO.
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Aluminum, complying with ASTM B800 and ASTM B801.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
 - 2. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 3. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
 - 4. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

2.3 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

- A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems; Atkore International.
 - 2. Alpha Wire; brand of Belden, Inc.
 - 3. Belden Inc.
 - 4. Encore Wire Corporation.
 - 5. General Cable; Prysmian Group North America.
 - 6. Okonite Company (The).
 - 7. Southwire Company, LLC.
 - 8. WESCO.
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Comply with UL 1569.
 - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Circuits:
 - 1. Single circuit.
 - 2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.
- E. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.
- F. Ground Conductor: Insulated.
- G. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
- H. Armor: Aluminum, interlocked.
- I. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

2.4 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
 - 2. CommScope, Inc.
 - 3. Comtran Corporation.
 - 4. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
 - 5. PYROTENAX; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
 - 6. Prysmian Cables and Systems; Prysmian Group North America.
 - 7. Radix Wire.
 - 8. Rockbestos-Suprenant Cable Corp.
 - 9. Superior Essex Inc.; subsidiary of LS Corp.
 - 10. West Penn Wire; brand of Belden, Inc.
- B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
- C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG.
 - 1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
- D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600 V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
 - 1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 - 2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.

2.5 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- C. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders:
 - 1. Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
 - 2. Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger. Conductors must be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits:
 - 1. Copper, Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
 - 2. Copper, Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger.
- C. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Metal-clad cable, Type MC.

- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533.13 "Conduits for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Comply with NFPA 72.
- B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal pathway according to Section 280528 "Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security."
 - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - 2. Fire-alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system must be installed in a dedicated pathway system.
 - a. Cables and pathways used for fire-alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
 - 3. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of two-hour, fire-rated fire-alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is permitted.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with fire-alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- D. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- E. Color-Coding: Color-code fire-alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire-alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- F. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire-alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.

- G. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1 inch conduit between the fire-alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material.
 - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inch of slack.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.7 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.8 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 260519

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Grounding and bonding conductors.
 - 2. Grounding and bonding connectors.
 - 3. Intersystem bonding bridge grounding connector.
 - 4. Grounding and bonding busbars.
 - 5. Grounding (earthing) electrodes.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features described in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1. Test wells.
 - 2. Rod electrodes.
 - 3. Ring electrodes.
 - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
 - 5. .
- C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
 - 1. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GROUNDING AND BONDING CONDUCTORS

- A. Equipment Grounding Conductor:
 - 1. General Characteristics: 600 V, [THHN/THWN-2] [or] [THWN-2], [copper] [or] [tinned-copper] wire or cable, green color, in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. ASTM - Bare Copper Grounding and Bonding Conductor:
 - 1. Referenced Standards: Complying with one or more of the following:
 - a. Soft or Annealed Copper Wire: ASTM B3
 - b. Concentric-Lay Stranded Copper Conductor: ASTM B8.
 - c. Tin-Coated Soft or Annealed Copper Wire: ASTM B33.
 - d. 19-Wire Combination Unilay-Stranded Copper Conductor: ASTM B787/B787M.

2.2 GROUNDING AND BONDING CLAMPS

- A. Description: Clamps suitable for attachment of grounding and bonding conductors to grounding electrodes, pipes, tubing, and rebar. Grounding and bonding clamps specified in this article are also suitable for use with communications applications; see Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems," for selection and installation guidelines.
- B. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 INTERSYSTEM BONDING BRIDGE GROUNDING CONNECTORS

- A. Description: Devices that provide means for connecting communications systems grounding and bonding conductors at service equipment or at disconnecting means for buildings or structures.
- B. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Listing Criteria:
 - a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment for Communications: UL CCN KDSH; including UL 467.

2.4 GROUNDING AND BONDING BUSBARS

- A. Description: Miscellaneous grounding and bonding device that serves as common connection for multiple grounding and bonding conductors.

2.5 GROUNDING (EARTHING) ELECTRODES

- A. Description: Grounding electrodes include rod electrodes, ring electrodes, metal underground water pipes, metal building frames, concrete-encased electrodes, and pipe and plate electrodes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine facility's grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of electrical system.
- B. Inspect test results of grounding system measured at point of electrical service equipment connection.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with connection of electrical service equipment only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SELECTION OF BUSBARS

- A. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inch minimum from wall, 6 inch above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

3.3 SELECTION OF GROUNDING AND BONDING CONDUCTORS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Custom-Length Insulated Equipment Bonding Jumpers: 6 AWG, 19-strand, Type THHN.
- C. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
- D. Bonding Conductor: 4 AWG or 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
- E. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inch wide and 1/16 inch thick.
- F. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inch wide and 1/16 inch thick.

3.4 SELECTION OF CONNECTORS

- A. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Reference Standards:
 - 1. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
 - 2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Special Techniques:
 - 1. Conductors:
 - a. Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
 - 2. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
 - a. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
 - b. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 - c. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless steel separators and mechanical clamps.
 - d. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
 - e. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.
 - f. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
 - 1) Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate adjacent parts.
 - 2) Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 - 3) Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if disconnect-type connection is required, use bolted clamp.
 - g. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
 - 1) Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use bolted clamp connector or bolt lug-type connector to pipe flange by using one of lug bolts of flange. Where dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 - 2) Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with bolted connector.
 - h. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
 - 3. Electrodes:
 - a. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inch below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1) Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
 - 2) Use exothermic welds for below-grade connections.
 - b. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to service grounding electrode conductor.

- c. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and must be at least 12 inch deep, with cover.
 - 1) Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- 4. Grounding at Service:
 - a. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors must be connected to ground bus. Install main bonding jumper between neutral and ground buses.
- 5. Grounding Separately Derived Systems:
 - a. Generator: Install grounding electrode(s) at generator location. Electrode must be connected to equipment grounding conductor and to frame of generator.
- 6. Equipment Grounding:
 - a. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with feeders and branch circuits.
 - b. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1) Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2) Lighting circuits.
 - 3) Receptacle circuits.
 - 4) Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 5) Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 6) Flexible raceway runs.
 - 7) Armored and metal-clad cable runs.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Conduit and cable support devices.
 - 2. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
 - 3. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
- C. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
 - 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32 inch diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inch on center in at least one surface.
 - 1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 2. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Plain steel.
 - 3. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
 - 4. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 5. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 6. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs must have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body must be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A36/A36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
 - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.

4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325.
6. Toggle Bolts: [All] [Stainless] steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SELECTION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Comply with requirements for raceways specified in Section 260533.13 "Conduits for Electrical Systems."
- C. Comply with requirements for boxes specified in Section 260533.16 "Boxes and Covers for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and ERM as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size must be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2 inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with NECA NEIS 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA NEIS 1, EMT or IMC may be supported by openings through structure members, in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination must be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inch thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inch thick.
 6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69.
 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate[by means that comply with seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements].
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Submit welding certificates.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 260533.13 - CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Type EMT-A and Type EMT-SS duct raceways and elbows.
 - 2. Type ENT duct raceways and fittings.
 - 3. Type ERMCA and Type ERMCSS duct raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
 - 4. Type ERMCS duct raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
 - 5. Type IMC duct raceways.
 - 6. Type LFMC duct raceways.
 - 7. Type LFNC duct raceways.
 - 8. Type PVC duct raceways and fittings.
 - 9. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
 - 10. Electrically conductive corrosion-resistant compounds for threaded conduit.
 - 11. Solvent cements.
- B. Products Installed, but Not Furnished, under This Section:
 - 1. See Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for electrical equipment labels.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 3. Section 260519 "Low-Voltage for Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for nonmetallic underground conduit with conductors (Type NUCC).

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Conduit: A structure containing one or more duct raceways.
- B. Duct Raceway: A single enclosed raceway for conductors or cable.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Type EMT-A and Type EMT-SS duct raceways and elbows.
 - 2. Type ENT duct raceways and fittings.
 - 3. Type ERMCA and Type ERMCSS duct raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
 - 4. Type ERMCS duct raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
 - 5. Type IMC duct raceways.
 - 6. Type LFMC duct raceways.
 - 7. Type LFNC duct raceways.
 - 8. Type PVC duct raceways and fittings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TYPE EMT-A AND TYPE EMT-SS DUCT RACEWAYS AND ELBOWS

- A. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FJMX; including UL 797A.
- B. Source Quality Control:
 - 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.

2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL FJMX - Aluminum Electrical Metal Tubing (EMT-A) and Elbows:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Conduit; Norsk Hydro ASA, Hydro Extrusion USA LLC.
 - b. Patriot Aluminum Products, LLC.
 - c. Penn Aluminum Conduit & EMT; Penn Aluminum International LLC; Berkshire Hathaway.
2. Material: Aluminum.
3. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).

2.2 TYPE ENT DUCT RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FKHU; including UL 1653.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL FKHU - Electrical Nonmetallic Tubing (ENT) and Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
 - b. Cantex Inc.
 - c. JM Eagle.
2. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
 - b. Fittings:
 - 1) Mechanically Attached Fittings: UL 1653.
 - 2) Solvent-Attached Fittings: UL 651.

2.3 TYPE ERMCA AND TYPE ERMSS DUCT RACEWAYS, ELBOWS, COUPLINGS, AND NIPPLES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DYWV; including UL 6A.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

2.4 TYPE ERMCS DUCT RACEWAYS, ELBOWS, COUPLINGS, AND NIPPLES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DYIX; including UL 6.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL DYIX - Galvanized-Steel Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit (ERMC-S-G), Elbows, Couplings, and Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
 - b. Calconduit; Atkore International.
 - c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - d. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
 - e. Wheatland Tube; Zekelman Industries.
 2. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
 3. Options:
 - a. Interior Coating: Zinc with organic top coating.
 - b. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).
- D. UL DYIX - PVC-Coated-Steel Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit (ERMC-S-PVC), Elbows, Couplings, and Nipples:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
 - b. Bluesteel Services LLC.
 - c. Calbond; Atkore International.
 - d. KorKap; Robroy Industries.
 - e. Perma-Cote; Robroy Industries.
 - f. Plasti-Bond; Robroy Industries.
 2. Options:
 - a. Exterior Coating: PVC complying with NEMA RN 1.
 - b. Interior Coating: Zinc with organic top coating.
 - c. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
 - d. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.
 - e. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: UL 1203.
 - f. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible bonding jumper.

2.5 TYPE IMC DUCT RACEWAYS

- A. Performance Criteria:
 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DYBY; including UL 1242.
- B. Source Quality Control:
 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
 2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.
- C. UL DYBY - Steel Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC):
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
 - b. Allied Tube & Conduit; Atkore International.
 - c. Calconduit; Atkore International.
 - d. Republic Conduit; Nucor Corporation, Nucor Tubular Products.
 - e. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
 - f. Western Tube; Zekelman Industries.
 - g. Wheatland Tube; Zekelman Industries.
 2. Options:
 - a. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
 - b. Interior Coating: Zinc.
 - c. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).

2.6 TYPE LFMC DUCT RACEWAYS

- A. Performance Criteria:
 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DXHR; including UL 360.
- B. Source Quality Control:
 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.

2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL DXHR - Steel Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC-S):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
 - b. Anaconda Sealtite; Anamet Electrical, Inc.
 - c. Electri-Flex Company.
 - d. International Metal Hose Co.
2. Material: Steel.
3. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).

2.7 TYPE LFNC DUCT RACEWAYS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DXOQ; including UL 1660.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL DXOQ - Layered (Type A) Liquidtight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit (LFNC-A):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AFC Cable Systems; Atkore International.
 - b. Electri-Flex Company.
 - c. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
2. Additional Criteria: Type A conduit with smooth seamless inner core and cover bonded together with one or more reinforcement layers between core and cover.
3. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).

2.8 TYPE PVC DUCT RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DZYR; including UL 651.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL DZYR - Schedule 40 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-40) and Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
 - b. Calconduit; Atkore International.
 - c. JM Eagle.
 - d. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
2. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 40.
3. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).

D. UL DZYR - Schedule 80 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-80) and Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
 - b. Calconduit; Atkore International.
 - c. JM Eagle.

- d. Topaz Lighting & Electric.
- 2. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 80.
- 3. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 16 (trade size 1/2).

2.9 FITTINGS FOR CONDUIT, TUBING, AND CABLE

- A. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Source Quality Control:
 - 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
 - 2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.
- C. UL EBMB - Duct Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations:
 - 1. Listing Criteria: UL CCN EBMB; including UL 1203.
- D. UL DWTT - Fittings for Type ERM, Type IMC, Type PVC, Type HDPE, Type EPEC, and Type RTRC Duct Raceways:
 - 1. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DWTT; including UL 514B.
 - 2. Options:
 - a. Material: Steel.
 - b. Coupling Method: Compression coupling.
 - c. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible bonding jumper.
- E. UL FKAV - Fittings for Type EMT Duct Raceways:
 - 1. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FKAV; including UL 514B.
 - 2. Options:
 - a. Material: Steel.
 - b. Coupling Method: Compression coupling.
 - c. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible bonding jumper.
- F. UL ILNR - Fittings for Type FMC Duct Raceways:
 - 1. Listing Criteria: UL CCN ILNR; including UL 514B.
- G. UL DXAS - Fittings for Type LFMC and Type LFNC Duct Raceways:
 - 1. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DXAS; including UL 514B.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SELECTION OF CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of duct raceways. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- B. Outdoors:
 - 1. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: ERM or IMC.
 - 2. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: ERM or IMC.
 - a. Locations less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above finished floor.
 - 3. Exposed and Not Subject to Physical Damage: ERM, IMC or Corrosion-resistant EMT.
 - 4. Concealed Aboveground: ERM, IMC or EMT.
 - 5. Direct Buried: PVC-80.
 - 6. Concrete Encased Not in Trench: PVC-80.
 - 7. Concrete Encased in Trench: PVC-80.
 - 8. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC or LFNC-A.
- C. Indoors:
 - 1. Hazardous Classified Locations: ERM or IMC.
 - 2. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: ERM or IMC. Locations include the following:

- a. Loading docks.
 - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
 - c. Mechanical rooms.
 - d. Gymnasiums.
 - 3. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: ERM or IMC. Locations include the following:
 - a. Locations less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above finished floor.
 - b. Stub-ups to above suspended ceilings.
 - 4. Exposed and Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
 - 5. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
 - 6. Damp or Wet Locations: Corrosion-resistant EMT.
 - 7. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
- D. Duct Fittings: Select fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.
- 1. ERM and IMC: Provide threaded-type fittings unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Reference Standards for Installation: Unless more stringent installation requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with the following:
- 1. Type EMT-A: Article 358 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 102.
 - 2. Type EMT-S: Article 358 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
 - 3. Type ENT: Article 362 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 102.
 - 4. Type ERM-A: Article 344 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 102.
 - 5. Type ERM-S: Article 344 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
 - 6. Type FMC-S: Article 348 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
 - 7. Type FMC-A: Article 348 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 102.
 - 8. Type FMT: Article 360 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
 - 9. Type IMC: Article 342 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
 - 10. Type LFMC: Article 350 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
 - 11. Type LFNC: Article 342 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 111.
 - 12. Type PVC: Article 356 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 111.
 - 13. Expansion Fittings: NEMA FB 2.40.
 - 14. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Interfaces with Other Work:
- 1. Coordinate with Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for installation of firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
 - 2. Coordinate with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduit hangers and supports.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
- 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533.13

SECTION 260533.16 - BOXES AND COVERS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
 - 2. Nonmetallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
 - 3. Junction boxes and pull boxes.
 - 4. Cover plates for device boxes.
 - 5. Hoods for outlet boxes.
- B. Products Installed, but Not Furnished, under This Section:
 - 1. See Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for electrical equipment labels.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
 - 2. Junction boxes and pull boxes.
 - 3. Cover plates for device boxes.
 - 4. Hoods for outlet boxes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALLIC OUTLET BOXES, DEVICE BOXES, RINGS, AND COVERS

- A. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN QCIT; including UL 514A.
- B. Source Quality Control:
 - 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
 - 2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.
 - 3. Samples:
 - a. Floor Box Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors and flooring inserts for each type of floor box.
 - b. Raised Floor Box Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors and flooring inserts for each type of floor box.
 - c. Recessed Access-Floor Box Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors and flooring inserts for each type of floor box.
 - d. Concrete Box Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors and flooring inserts for each type of floor box.
- C. UL QCIT - Metallic Outlet Boxes and Covers:
 - 1. Description: Box having pryout openings, knockouts, threaded entries, or hubs in either the sides of the back, or both, for entrance of conduit, conduit or cable fittings, or cables, with provisions for mounting outlet box cover, but without provisions for mounting wiring device directly to box.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - b. Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.

- c. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
- d. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC.

D. UL QCIT - Metallic Floor Boxes and Floor Box Covers:

- 1. Description: Box mounted in floor with floor box cover and other components to complete floor box enclosure.
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - b. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
 - c. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC.

2.2 NONMETALLIC OUTLET BOXES, DEVICE BOXES, RINGS, AND COVERS

A. Performance Criteria:

- 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
- 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN QCMZ; including UL 514C.

B. Source Quality Control:

- 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.

2.3 JUNCTION BOXES AND PULL BOXES

A. Performance Criteria:

- 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
- 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN BGUZ; including UL 50 and UL 50E.

B. Source Quality Control:

- 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.

C. UL BGUZ - Indoor Sheet Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

- 1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
 - b. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
 - c. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - d. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - e. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
 - f. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- 3. Options:
 - a. Degree of Protection: Type 1.

D. UL BGUZ - Outdoor Sheet Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

- 1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
 - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - c. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
 - d. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - e. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
 - f. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - g. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
 - h. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- 3. Options:
 - a. Degree of Protection: Type 3R.

E. UL BGUZ - Outdoor Cast-Metal Junction and Pull Boxes:

- 1. Description: Box with a blank cover that serves the purpose of joining different runs of raceway or cable.
- 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Appleton; Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions.
 - b. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.

- c. O-Z/Gedney; brand of Emerson Electric Co., Automation Solutions, Appleton Group.
- 3. Options:
 - a. Degree of Protection: Type 3R.

2.4 COVER PLATES FOR DEVICES BOXES

- A. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN QCIT or UL CCN QCMZ; including UL 514D.
 - 3. Wallplate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match wallplate finish.
- B. Source Quality Control:
 - 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
- C. UL QCIT or QCMZ - Metallic Cover Plates for Device Boxes:
 - 1. Options:
 - a. Damp and Wet Locations: Listed, labeled, and marked for location and use. Provide gaskets and accessories necessary for compliance with listing.
 - b. Wallplate Material: 0.032 inch thick, Type 302/304 non-magnetic stainless steel with brushed finish.
- D. UL QCIT or QCMZ - Nonmetallic Cover Plates for Device Boxes:
 - 1. Options:
 - a. Damp and Wet Locations: Listed, labeled, and marked for location and use. Provide gaskets and accessories necessary for compliance with listing.
 - b. Wallplate Material: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device .
 - c. Color: White.

2.5 HOODS FOR OUTLET BOXES

- A. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Listing Criteria:
 - a. UL CCN QCIT or UL CCN QCMZ; including UL 514D.
 - b. Receptacle, Hood, Cover Plate, Gaskets, and Seals: UL 498 Supplement SA when mated with box or enclosure complying with UL 514A, UL 514C, or UL 50E.
 - 3. Mounts to box using fasteners different from wiring device.
- B. Source Quality Control:
 - 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
- C. UL QCIT or QCMZ - Extra-Duty, While-in-Use Hoods for Outlet Boxes:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - b. Raco Taymac Bell; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - 2. Options:
 - a. Provides gray, weatherproof, "while-in-use" cover.
 - b. Manufacturer may combine nonmetallic device box with hood as extra-duty rated assembly.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SELECTION OF BOXES AND COVERS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of boxes and enclosures. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- B. Degree of Protection:
 - 1. Outdoors:

- a. Type 3R unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Locations in-Ground or Exposed to Corrosive Agents: Type 4X.
- 2. Indoors:
 - a. Type 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Exposed Boxes Installed Less Than 2.5 m (8 ft) Above Floor:
 - 1. Provide exposed cover. Flat covers with angled mounting slots or knockouts are prohibited.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF BOXES AND COVERS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Reference Standards for Installation: Unless more stringent installation requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with the following:
 - 1. Outlet, Device, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Article 314 of NFPA 70.
 - 2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Special Installation Techniques:
 - 1. Provide boxes in wiring and raceway systems wherever required for pulling of wires, making connections, and mounting of devices or fixtures.
 - 2. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to [center] [top] [bottom] of box unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box, whether installed indoors or outdoors.
 - 4. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
 - 5. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
 - 6. Support boxes in recessed ceilings independent of ceiling tiles and ceiling grid.
 - 7. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for purpose.
 - 8. Fasten junction and pull boxes to, or support from, building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
 - 9. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
 - 10. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.
 - 11. Do not install aluminum boxes, enclosures, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
 - 12. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to ensure a continuous ground path.
 - 13. Boxes and Enclosures in Areas or Walls with Acoustical Requirements:
 - a. Seal openings and knockouts in back and sides of boxes and enclosures with acoustically rated putty.
 - b. Provide gaskets for wallplates and covers.
 - 14. Identification: Provide labels for boxes and associated electrical equipment.
 - a. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components.
 - b. Provide warning signs.
 - c. Label each box with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. After installation, protect boxes from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 260533.16

SECTION 260536 - CABLE TRAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wire-mesh cable tray.
 - 2. Cable tray accessories.
 - 3. Warning signs.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of cable tray.
 - 1. Show fabrication and installation details of cable trays, including plans, elevations, and sections of components and attachments to other construction elements. Designate components and accessories, including clamps, brackets, hanger rods, splice-plate connectors, expansion-joint assemblies, straight lengths, and fittings.
 - 2. Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements. Include the following:
 - a. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
 - b. Clearances for access above and to sides of cable trays.
 - c. Vertical elevation of cable trays above the floor or bottom of ceiling structure.
 - d. Load calculations to show dead and live loads as not exceeding manufacturer's rating for tray and its support elements.
- C. Delegated Design Submittal: For seismic restraints.
 - 1. Seismic-Restraint Details: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer who is licensed in the state where Project is located and who is responsible for their preparation.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
 - 3. Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported cable trays.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified structural professional engineer to design cable tray supports.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CABLE TRAY

- A. Cable Trays and Accessories: Identified as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location, application, and grounding.
- B. Sizes and Configurations: See the Cable Tray Schedule on Drawings for specific requirements for types, materials, sizes, and configurations.
- C. Structural Performance: See articles on individual cable tray types for specific values for the following parameters:
 - 1. Uniform Load Distribution: Capable of supporting a uniformly distributed load on the indicated support span when supported as a simple span and tested according to NEMA VE 1.
 - 2. Concentrated Load: A load applied at midpoint of span and centerline of tray.

3. Load and Safety Factors: Applicable to both side rails and rung capacities.

2.3 WIRE-MESH CABLE TRAY

- A. Description: Galvanized-steel wire mesh, complying with NEMA VE 1.
- B. Capacities and Characteristics:
 1. Width: 12 inch (300 mm) unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 2. Minimum Usable Load Depth: 2 inch (50 mm).
 3. Straight Section Lengths: 10 ft. (3.0 m), except where shorter lengths are required to facilitate tray assembly.
 4. Structural Performance: Capable of supporting a maximum cable load, with a safety factor of 1.5, plus a 200 lb (90 kg) concentrated load, when tested according to NEMA VE 1.
 5. Class Designation: Comply with NEMA VE 1, Class 5A.
 6. Splicing Assemblies: Bolted type using serrated flange locknuts.
 7. Splice-Plate Capacity: Splices located within support span must not diminish rated loading capacity of cable tray.
- C. Materials and Finishes:
 1. Steel:
 - a. Straight Sections and Fittings: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A1011/A1011M, SS, Grade 33.
 - b. Steel Tray Splice Plates: ASTM A1011/A1011M, HSLAS, Grade 50, Class 1.
 - c. Fasteners: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A510/A510M, Grade 1008.
 - d. Finish:
 - 1) Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, complying with ASTM A123/A123M, Class B2.
 - a) Hardware: Chromium-zinc plated, ASTM F1136 [Stainless steel, Type 316].

2.4 CABLE TRAY ACCESSORIES

- A. Fittings: Tees, crosses, risers, elbows, and other fittings as indicated, of same materials and finishes as cable tray.
- B. Barrier Strips: Same materials and finishes as for cable tray.
- C. Cable tray supports and connectors, including bonding jumpers, as recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF CABLE TRAY

- A. Install cable tray and support systems according to NEMA VE 2.
- B. Install cable tray as a complete system, including fasteners, hold-down clips, support systems, barrier strips, adjustable horizontal and vertical splice plates, elbows, reducers, tees, crosses, cable dropouts, adapters, covers, and bonding.
- C. Install cable tray, so that the tray is accessible for cable installation and all splices are accessible for inspection and adjustment.
- D. Remove burrs and sharp edges from cable trays.
- E. Fasten cable tray supports to building structure.
- F. Design fasteners and supports to carry cable tray, cables, and a concentrated load of 200 lb (90 kg). Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- G. Place supports, so that spans do not exceed maximum spans on schedules, and provide clearances shown on Drawings. Install intermediate supports when cable weight exceeds the load-carrying capacity of tray rungs.
- H. Construct supports from channel members, threaded rods, and other appurtenances furnished by cable tray manufacturer. Arrange supports in trapeze or wall-bracket form as required by application.

- I. Do not install more than one cable tray splice between supports.
- J. Make changes in direction and elevation using manufacturer's recommended fittings.
- K. Make cable tray connections using manufacturer's recommended fittings.
- L. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- M. Install capped metal sleeves for future cables through firestop-sealed cable tray penetrations of fire and smoke barriers.
- N. Install cable trays with enough workspace to permit access for installing cables.
- O. Install barriers to separate cables of different systems, such as power, communications, and data processing, or of different insulation levels, such as 600, 5000, and 15 000 V.
- P. Install permanent covers, if used, after installing cable.
- Q. Clamp covers on cable trays installed outdoors with heavy-duty clamps.
- R. Install warning signs in visible locations on or near cable trays after cable tray installation.

3.2 CABLE TRAY GROUNDING

- A. Ground cable trays according to NFPA 70 unless additional grounding is specified. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Cable trays with electrical power conductors must be bonded together with splice plates listed for grounding purposes or with listed bonding jumpers.
- C. Cable trays with single-conductor power conductors must be bonded together with a grounding conductor run in the tray along with the power conductors and bonded to the tray at 72 inch (1800 mm) intervals. The grounding conductor must be sized according to NFPA 70, Article 250.122, "Size of Equipment Grounding Conductors," and Article 392, "Cable Trays."
- D. When using epoxy- or powder-coat painted cable trays as a grounding conductor, completely remove coating at all splice contact points or ground connector attachment. After completing splice-to-grounding-bolt attachment, repair the coated surfaces with coating materials recommended by cable tray manufacturer.
- E. Bond cable trays to power source for cables contained within with bonding conductors sized according to NFPA 70, Article 250.122, "Size of Equipment Grounding Conductors."
- F. In existing construction, remove inactive or dead cables from cable trays.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Remove paint from all connection points before making connections. Repair paint after the connections are completed.
- B. Connect raceways to cable trays according to requirements in NEMA VE 2 and NEMA FG 1.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing cable trays and after electrical circuitry has been energized, survey for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Visually inspect cable insulation for damage. Correct sharp corners, protuberances in cable trays, vibrations, and thermal expansion and contraction conditions, which may cause or have caused damage.
 - 3. Verify that the number, size, and voltage of cables in cable trays do not exceed that permitted by NFPA 70. Verify that communications or data-processing circuits are separated from power circuits by barriers or are installed in separate cable trays.

4. Verify that there are no intruding items, such as pipes, hangers, or other equipment, in the cable tray.
5. Remove dust deposits, industrial process materials, trash of any description, and any blockage of tray ventilation.
6. Visually inspect each cable tray joint and each ground connection for mechanical continuity. Check bolted connections between sections for corrosion. Clean and retorque in suspect areas.
7. Check for improperly sized or installed bonding jumpers.
8. Check for missing, incorrect, or damaged bolts, bolt heads, or nuts. When found, replace with specified hardware.
9. Perform visual and mechanical checks for adequacy of cable tray grounding; verify that all takeoff raceways are bonded to cable trays. Test entire cable tray system for continuity. Maximum allowable resistance is 1 ohm.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed cable trays and cables.

1. Install temporary protection for cables in open trays to safeguard exposed cables against falling objects or debris during construction. Temporary protection for cables and cable tray can be constructed of wood or metal materials and must remain in place until the risk of damage is over.
2. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by cable tray manufacturer.
3. Repair damage to paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260536

SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Round sleeves.
 - 2. Rectangular sleeves.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROUND SLEEVES

- A. Steel Wall Sleeves:
 - 1. General Characteristics: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends and integral waterstop.
- B. PVC Pipe Sleeves:
 - 1. General Characteristics: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.

2.2 RECTANGULAR SLEEVES

- A. Rectangular, Galvanized-Steel, Sheet Metal Sleeves:
 - 1. General Characteristics:
 - a. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - b. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - 1) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inch and with no side larger than 16 inch, thickness must be 0.052 inch.
 - 2) For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter not less than 50 inch or with one or more sides larger than 16 inch, thickness must be 0.138 inch.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. General Characteristics: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable or between raceway and cable.
- B. Options:
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVES FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade, Non-Fire-Rated, Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

- a. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall or floor so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 - b. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4 inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless sleeve-seal system is to be installed[or seismic criteria require different clearance].
 - 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
 - 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inch above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Wall Assemblies:
- 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for wall assemblies.
- C. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- D. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve-seal systems. Size sleeves to allow for 1 inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- E. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations:
- 1. Install steel pipe sleeves with integral waterstops. Size sleeves to allow for 1 inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system. Install sleeve during construction of floor or wall.
 - 2. Install steel pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1 inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system. Grout sleeve into wall or floor opening.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RECTANGULAR SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Install sleeves in existing walls without compromising structural integrity of walls. Do not cut structural elements without reinforcing the wall to maintain the designed weight bearing and wall stiffness.
- B. Install conduits and cable with no crossings within the sleeve.
- C. Fill opening around conduits and cables with expanding foam without leaving voids.
- D. Provide metal sheet covering at both wall surfaces and finish to match surrounding surfaces. Metal sheet must be same material as sleeve.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

END OF SECTION 260544

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Labels.
 - 2. Signs.
 - 3. Miscellaneous identification products.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1.
- B. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 for color identification of hazards; 29 CFR 1910.145 for danger, caution, warning, and safety instruction signs and tags; and the following:
- C. Signs, labels, and tags required for personnel safety must comply with the following standards:
 - 1. Safety Colors: NEMA Z535.1.
 - 2. Facility Safety Signs: NEMA Z535.2.
 - 3. Safety Symbols: NEMA Z535.3.
 - 4. Product Safety Signs and Labels: NEMA Z535.4.
 - 5. Safety Tags and Barricade Tapes for Temporary Hazards: NEMA Z535.5.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70E and Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, must comply with UL 969.

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 1000 V or Less:
 - 1. Black letters on orange field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 1000 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
 - 1. Color must be factory applied.
 - 2. Colors for 208Y/120 V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - c. Phase C: Blue.
 - 3. Colors for 240 V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - 4. Colors for 480Y/277 V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Brown.
 - b. Phase B: Orange.
 - c. Phase C: Yellow.
 - 5. Color for Neutral: White.
 - 6. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.

7. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with two or more yellow stripes.

C. Warning Label Colors:

1. Identify system voltage with black letters on orange background.

D. Warning labels and signs must include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."

E. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on white field.

2.3 SIGNS

A. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Engraved legend.

2. Thickness:

a. For signs up to 20 sq. inch, minimum 1/16 inch thick.

b. For signs larger than 20 sq. inch, 1/8 inch thick.

c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless steel screws or stainless steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

C. Verify identity of item before installing identification products.

D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.

E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.

G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 1000 V: Identification must completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.

1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.

H. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.

- I. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on red background with minimum 3/8 inch high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- J. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from floor.
- K. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify cover of junction and pull box of the following systems with wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends must be as follows:
 - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 - 2. "POWER."
 - 3. "UPS."
- L. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at location with high visibility and accessibility.
 - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to location and substrate.
- M. Snap-Around Labels: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- N. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- O. Self-Adhesive Labels:
 - 1. Install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide single line of text with 1/2 inch high letters on 1-1/2 inch high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inch high.
- P. Snap-Around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- Q. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- S. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- T. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- U. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's instructions.
- V. Underground Line Warning Tape:
 - 1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inch below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in common trench [or concrete envelope] exceeds 16 inch overall.
 - 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
 - 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- W. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
 - 1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to location and substrate.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide single line of text with 1/2 inch high letters on 1-1/2 inch high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inch high.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- D. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.

- E. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive labels.
 - 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 - 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power-transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- F. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- G. Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels or Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs.
- H. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels or Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with white legend on red background with minimum 3/8 inch high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- I. Equipment Identification Labels:
 - 1. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive label or Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign.
 - 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Electronic time switches.
 - 2. Electromechanical dial-time switches.
 - 3. Outdoor photoelectric switches, solid state, flexible mounting.
 - 4. Lighting contactors.
 - 5. Conductors and cables.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 3. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ELECTROMECHANICAL DIAL-TIME SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Intermatic, Inc.
 - 3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 4. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
- B. Electromechanical-Dial Time Switches: Comply with UL 917.
 - 1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Contact Configuration: as indicated on plans.
 - 3. Contact Rating: 30 A inductive or resistive, 240 V(ac).
 - 4. Circuitry: Allows connection of a photoelectric relay as a substitute for the on-off function of a program.
 - 5. Astronomic time dial.
 - 6. Eight-Day Program: Uniquely programmable for each weekday and holidays.
 - 7. Skip-a-day mode.
 - 8. Wound-spring reserve carryover mechanism to keep time during power failures, minimum of 16 hours.

2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES, SOLID STATE, FLEXIBLE MOUNTING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Intermatic, Inc.
 - 3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 4. nLight; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
- B. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 1800 VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.
 - 1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.

3. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with ANSI C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure from same source and manufacturer as switch.
6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.

2.3 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's instructions.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WIRING

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch.
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors in accordance with conductor manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Size conductors in accordance with lighting control device manufacturer's instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, device, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

END OF SECTION 2620923

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Power panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
 - 3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- B. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Power panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
 - 3. Load centers.
 - 4. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
 - 5. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
 - 6. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
 - 3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
 - 4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
 - 5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
 - 6. Include evidence of listing, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for series rating of installed devices.
 - 7. Include evidence of listing, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for SPD as installed in panelboard.
 - 8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
 - 9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 10. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
 - 11. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of coordination curves.
- C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
 - 1. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty documentation.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed panelboards perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.
 - 1. Extended-Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards in accordance with IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing agency recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Enclosures: Flush or Surface-mounted as indicated on plans, dead-front cabinets.
 - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
 - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: UL 50E, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 3R.
 - 2. Height: 7 ft maximum.
 - 3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims must cover live parts and may have no exposed hardware.
- F. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
 - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
- G. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 - 2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with lug on neutral bar for each pole in panelboard.
 - 3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with lug on bar for each pole in panelboard.
 - 4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
 - 5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- H. Quality-Control Label: Panelboards or load centers must be labeled, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers must have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- I. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers must have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- J. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating:
 - 1. Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction. Include label or manual with size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices listed and labeled, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for series-connected short-circuit rating.

2. Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

- K. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 1.

2.2 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Eaton.
 2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 3. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Listing Criteria: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 1. For doors more than 36 inch high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Eaton.
 2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 3. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Listing Criteria: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- D. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
 - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
 - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
 - a. RMS sensing.
 - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
 - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
 - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
 - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event must be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused trip.
 - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
 - g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
 - 1) Instantaneous trip.
 - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
 - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.

5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6 mA trip).
6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30 mA trip).
7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240 V, single-pole configuration.
8. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
9. MCCB Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
 - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
 - d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
 - f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - g. Shunt Trip: 120 V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
 - h. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in off position.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Reference Standards:
 1. Panelboards: Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NECA 407.
 2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Special Techniques:
 1. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
 2. Mount top of trim 7.5 ft above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
 4. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
 5. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 - a. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
 6. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
 7. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
 8. Stub four 1 inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in future. Stub four 1 inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.
- E. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles must be located on interior of panelboard door.
- F. Breaker Labels: Faceplate must list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- G. Circuit Directory:

1. Provide directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
 - a. Circuit directory must identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from other circuits.
2. Provide computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
 - a. Circuit directory must identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from other circuits.
3. Create directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers. Perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- C. Nonconforming Work:
 1. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- D. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports, including certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262716 - ELECTRICAL CABINETS AND ENCLOSURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cabinets and cutout boxes.
 - 2. Miscellaneous enclosures.
- B. Products Installed, but Not Furnished, under This Section:
 - 1. See Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for equipment labels.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Cabinets and cutout boxes.
 - 2. Miscellaneous enclosures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CABINETS AND CUTOUT BOXES

- A. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Listing Criteria:
 - a. UL CCN CYIV.
 - b. Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.
 - c. Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.
- B. Source Quality Control:
 - 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
 - 2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.
- C. UL CYIV - Indoor Sheet Metal Cabinets:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
 - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
 - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - d. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
 - e. Milgard Manufacturing, LLC.
 - f. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
 - 2. General Characteristics: Enclosure provided with frame, mat, or trim in which swinging door or doors are or can be hung.
 - 3. Options:
 - a. Degree of Protection: Type 1.
- D. UL CYIV - Indoor Sheet Metal Cutout Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
 - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
 - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - d. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
 - e. Milgard Manufacturing, LLC.
 - f. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
2. General Characteristics: Enclosure that has swinging doors or covers secured directly to and telescoping with walls of enclosure.
3. Options:
 - a. Degree of Protection: Type 1.

E. UL CYIV - Outdoor Sheet Metal Cabinets:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
 - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
 - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - d. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
 - e. Milgard Manufacturing, LLC.
 - f. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
2. General Characteristics: Enclosure provided with frame, mat, or trim in which swinging door or doors are or can be hung.
3. Options:
 - a. Degree of Protection: Type 3R.

F. UL CYIV - Outdoor Sheet Metal Cutout Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
 - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - c. Crouse-Hinds; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - d. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
 - e. Milgard Manufacturing, LLC.
 - f. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
2. General Characteristics: Enclosure that has swinging doors or covers secured directly to and telescoping with walls of enclosure.
3. Options:
 - a. Degree of Protection: Type 3R.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS ENCLOSURES

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria:
 - a. UL CCK XCKT; including UL 1773.
 - b. Non-Environmental Characteristics: UL 50.
 - c. Environmental Characteristics: UL 50E.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL XCKT - Indoor Sheet Metal Miscellaneous Enclosures:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
 - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - c. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc.

- d. Milgard Manufacturing, LLC.
 - e. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- 2. Options:
 - a. Degree of Protection: Type 1.
- D. UL XCKT - Outdoor Sheet Metal Miscellaneous Enclosures:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. ABB, Electrification Business.
 - b. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - c. Hoffman; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
 - d. Milgard Manufacturing, LLC.
 - e. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
 - 2. Options:
 - a. Degree of Protection: Type 3R.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION ELECTRICAL CABINETS AND ENCLOSURES

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Reference Standards for Installation: Unless more stringent installation requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with the following:
 - 1. Cabinets and Cutout Boxes: Article 312 of NFPA 70.
 - 2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Interfaces with Other Work:
 - 1. Coordinate with Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for installation of sealants.
 - 2. Grounding and Bonding:
 - a. Cabinets, Enclosures, and Racks for Electrical Systems: Coordinate with Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding of RBBs.
 - b. Cabinets, Enclosures, and Racks for Communications Systems and Electronic Safety and Security Systems: Coordinate with Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding of RBBs.

3.2 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings and finishes of cabinets, enclosures, and racks from damage and deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 262716

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. General-use switches, dimmer switches, and fan-speed controller switches.
 - 2. General-grade duplex straight-blade receptacles.
 - 3. Receptacles with arc-fault and ground-fault protective devices.
 - 4. Connectors, cords, and plugs.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for occupancy sensors, timers, control-voltage switches, and control-voltage dimmers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. General-use switches, dimmer switches, and fan-speed controller switches.
 - 2. General-grade duplex straight-blade receptacles.
 - 3. Receptacles with arc-fault and ground-fault protective devices.
 - 4. Special-purpose power outlet assemblies.
 - 5. Connectors, cords, and plugs.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL-USE SWITCHES, DIMMER SWITCHES, AND FAN-SPEED CONTROLLER SWITCHES

- A. Toggle Switch:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
 - 2. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN WMUZ and UL 20.
 - 4. Options:
 - a. Device Color: White.
 - b. Configuration:
 - 1) General-duty, 120-277 V, 20 A.
 - 5. Accessories:
 - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish.
- B. Dimmer Switch:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. GE Lighting; a Savant Company.
 - b. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
 - 2. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN EOYX and UL 1472 Type I dimmer.

4. Options:
 - a. Device Color: White.
 - b. Dimming Control Style: Slide.
5. Accessories:
 - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish.

2.2 GENERAL-GRADE DUPLEX STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
2. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
3. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
4. Options:
 - a. Device Color: White.
 - b. Configuration:
 - 1) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R unless noted otherwise on plans.
5. Accessories:
 - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish.

B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
2. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
3. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
4. Options:
 - a. Device Color: White.
 - b. Configuration:
 - 1) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R.
5. Accessories:
 - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish.

C. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle with USB Outlet to Power Class 2 Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
2. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
3. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
4. Options:
 - a. Device Color: White.
 - b. Configuration:
 - 1) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R; two USB-A ports.
 - 2) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R; two USB-C ports.
 - 3) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R; one USB-A port; one USB-C port.
 - 4) General-duty, smooth face, two USB-A ports.

- 5) General-duty, smooth face, four USB-A ports.
5. Accessories:
 - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish.

2.3 RECEPTACLES WITH ARC-FAULT AND GROUND-FAULT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. General-Grade, Weather-Resistant, Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle with GFCI Device:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
 2. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 3. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN KCXS, UL 498, and UL 943.
 4. Options:
 - a. Device Color: White.
 - b. Configuration: Heavy-duty, NEMA 5-20R.
 5. Accessories:
 - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish.

2.4 CONNECTORS, CORDS, AND PLUGS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receptacles:
 1. Verify that receptacles to be procured and installed for Owner-furnished equipment are compatible with mating attachment plugs on equipment.
- B. Cord Reels:
 1. Examine roughing-in for cord reel mounting and power connections to verify actual locations of mounts and power connections before cord reel installation.
 2. Examine walls, floors, and ceilings for suitable conditions where cord reel will be installed.
 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF SWITCHES

- A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Reference Standards:
 1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' instructions, comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
 2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
 3. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Identification:
 1. Identify cover or cover plate for device with panelboard identification and circuit number in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - a. Mark cover or cover plate using hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering, and provide durable wire markers or tags inside device box or outlet box.
 - b. Healthcare Facilities: Distinctively identify covers or cover plates of device boxes and outlet boxes that are supplied from life safety and critical branch power supplies following facility's standard practice.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Reference Standards:
 - 1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' instructions, comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
 - 2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
 - 3. Receptacle Orientation: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, orient receptacle to match configuration diagram in NEMA WD 6.
 - 4. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Identification:
 - 1. Identify cover or cover plate for device with panelboard identification and circuit number in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Nonfusible switches.
 - 3. Enclosures.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. GFEP: Ground-fault circuit-interrupter for equipment protection.
- B. GFLS: Ground-fault circuit-interrupter for life safety.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 - 2. Enclosure types and details for types other than UL 50E, Type 1.
 - 3. Current and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
 - 5. Include evidence of qualified electrical testing laboratory listing for series rating of installed devices.
 - 6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
 - 7. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in [PDF] [and] <Insert calculation program format> electronic format.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
 - 1. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample warranties.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty documentation.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed enclosed switches and circuit breakers perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.
 - 1. Extended-Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 - 3. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Type GD, General Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240 V(ac), 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 600 V(ac), 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Double Throw, 600 V(ac), 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, UL 50E, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: Enclosure must be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (UL 50E Type 1).
- C. Conduit Entry: UL 50E Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures may not contain knockouts. UL 50E Types 7 and 9 enclosures must be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SELECTION OF ENCLOSURES

- A. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: UL 50E, Type 1.
- B. Outdoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 3R.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Special Techniques:
 - 1. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
 - 2. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Install fuses in fusible devices.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 263213.13 - DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Diesel-engine-driven generator sets.
 - 2. Diesel engine.
 - 3. Diesel fuel-oil system.
 - 4. Control and monitoring.
 - 5. Generator overcurrent and fault protection.
 - 6. Generator, exciter, and voltage regulator.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 263600 "Transfer Switches" for transfer switches including sensors and relays to initiate automatic-starting and -stopping signals for engine generators.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans and elevations for engine generator and other components specified. Indicate access requirements affected by height of subbase fuel tank.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
 - 4. Design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
 - 5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include base weights.
 - 6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for engine generators and functional relationship between all electrical components.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Source quality-control reports.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DIESEL-ENGINE-DRIVEN GENERATOR SETS

- A. Kohler
- B. Caterpillar, Inc
- C. Cummins

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. B11 Compliance: Comply with B11.19.
- B. NFPA Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 37.
 - 2. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200.
- D. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier 2 requirements and applicable state and local government requirements.
- E. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by engine generator including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.
- F. Environmental Conditions: Engine generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: 41 to 104 deg F.
 - 2. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
 - 3. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

2.3 ENGINE GENERATOR ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- C. Power Rating: Standby.
- D. Overload Capacity: 110 percent of service load for 1 hour in 12 consecutive hours.
- E. EPSS Class: Engine generator shall be classified as a Class 48 according to NFPA 110.
- F. Power Factor: 0.8, lagging.
- G. Frequency: 60 Hz.
- H. Induction Method: Naturally aspirated.
- I. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.
- J. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.
 - 1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and engine generator center of gravity.
- K. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries.
2. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.

L. Engine Generator Performance:

1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
8. Start Time:
 - a. Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10 system requirements.

2.4 DIESEL ENGINE

- A. Fuel: ASTM D975, diesel fuel oil, Grade 2-D S15.
- B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.
- C. Lubrication System: Engine or skid-mounted.
 1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
 2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
 3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.
- D. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine generator mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
 1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
 3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
 4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 5. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, UV-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
 - a. Rating: 50-psig maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F, and noncollapsible under vacuum.
 - b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.
- E. Muffler/Silencer: Commercial type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.
 1. Minimum sound attenuation of 12 dB at 500 Hz.
 2. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 90 dBA or less.
- F. Air-Intake Filter: Standard-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.
- G. Starting System: 12-V electric, with negative ground.

1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
4. Battery: Lead acid, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least twice without recharging.
5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
6. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish and thermal insulation. Thermostatically controlled heater shall be arranged to maintain battery above 50 deg F regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place. Provide ventilation to exhaust battery gases.
7. Battery Stand: Factory-fabricated, two-tier metal with acid-resistant finish designed to hold the quantity of battery cells required and to maintain the arrangement to minimize lengths of battery interconnections.
8. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
9. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing, and float-charging type designed for lead-acid batteries. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:
 - a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
 - b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 to 140 deg F to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
 - c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
 - d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
 - e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
 - f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

2.5 DIESEL FUEL-OIL SYSTEM

- A. Comply with NFPA 37.
- B. Piping: Fuel-oil piping shall be Schedule 40 black steel, complying with requirements in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping." Cast iron, aluminum, copper, and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil system.
- C. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine to provide primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.
- D. Fuel Filtering: Remove water and contaminants larger than 1 micron.
- E. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.
- F. Subbase-Mounted, Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with UL 142 fuel-oil tank. Features include the following:
 1. Tank level indicator.
 2. Fuel-Tank Capacity: Minimum 48 hour capacity at 100% run capacity.
 3. Leak detection in interstitial space.
 4. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
 5. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.6 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of engine generator. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, engine generator starts. The off position of same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.

- B. Manual Starting System Sequence of Operation: Switching on-off switch on the generator control panel to the on position starts engine generator. The off position of same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.
- C. Provide minimum run time control set for 15 minutes with override only by operation of a remote emergency-stop switch.
- D. Comply with UL 508A.
- E. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common wall-mounted control and monitoring panel. Panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery. Panel shall have the ability to be networked to allow for remote monitoring.
- F. Control and Monitoring Panel:
 - 1. Digital engine generator controller with integrated LCD display, controls, and microprocessor, capable of local and remote control, monitoring, and programming, with battery backup.
 - 2. Instruments: Located on the control and monitoring panel and viewable during operation.
 - a. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
 - b. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
 - c. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
 - d. Running-time meter.
 - 3. Controls and Protective Devices: Controls, shutdown devices, and common alarm indication, including the following:
 - a. Cranking control equipment.
 - b. Run-Off-Auto switch.
 - c. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
 - d. Overcrank alarm.
 - e. Overcrank shutdown device.
 - f. Low-water temperature alarm.
 - g. High engine temperature prealarm.
 - h. High engine temperature.
 - i. High engine temperature shutdown device.
 - j. Overspeed alarm.
 - k. Overspeed shutdown device.
 - l. Low fuel main tank.
 - 1) Low-fuel-level alarm shall be initiated when the level falls below that required for operation for duration required for the indicated EPSS class.
 - m. Coolant low-level alarm.
 - n. EPS load indicator.
 - o. Battery high-voltage alarm.
 - p. Low cranking voltage alarm.
 - q. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
 - r. Battery low-voltage alarm.
 - s. Lamp test.
 - t. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
 - u. Generator overcurrent-protective-device not-closed alarm.
 - v. Hours of operation.
 - w. Engine generator metering, including voltage, current, hertz, kilowatt, kilovolt ampere, and power factor.
- G. Remote Alarm Annunciator: An LED indicator light labeled with proper alarm conditions shall identify each alarm event, and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition. Silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset. Cabinet and faceplate are surface- or flush-mounting type to suit mounting conditions indicated.
 - 1. Overcrank alarm.
 - 2. Low water-temperature alarm.
 - 3. High engine temperature prealarm.
 - 4. High engine temperature alarm.
 - 5. Low lube oil pressure alarm.
 - 6. Overspeed alarm.
 - 7. Low fuel main tank alarm.
 - 8. Low coolant level alarm.

9. Low cranking voltage alarm.
10. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
11. Audible-alarm silencing switch.
12. Air shutdown damper when used.
13. Run-Off-Auto switch.
14. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.

- H. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

2.7 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

- A. Overcurrent protective devices shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs.
1. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall consider both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.
 2. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.
- B. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, thermal-magnetic type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.
1. Tripping Characteristic: Designed specifically for generator protection.
 2. Trip Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
 3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
 4. Mounting: Adjacent to, or integrated with, control and monitoring panel.

2.8 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.
- B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.
- C. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.
- D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required. Provide six-lead alternator.
- E. Range: Provide limited range of output voltage by adjusting the excitation level.
- F. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.
- G. Enclosure: Dripproof.
- H. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.
- I. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.
1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
 2. Maintain voltage within 30 percent on one step, full load.
 3. Provide anti-hunt provision to stabilize voltage.
 4. Maintain frequency within 10 percent and stabilize at rated frequency within 2 seconds.
- J. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.
- K. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine generator using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.
 - 1. Tests: Comply with IEEE 115.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 404.
- B. Comply with packaged engine generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions.
- C. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
- D. Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Provide a minimum of one 90-degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the engine generator from a stationary element.
- C. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install a sign indicating the generator neutral is bonded to the main service neutral at the main service location.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical and mechanical test listed in first two subparagraphs below, as specified in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - 1) Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and the Specifications.
 - 2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - 3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
 - 4) Verify that the unit is clean.
 - b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests:
 - 1) Perform insulation-resistance tests according to IEEE 43.
 - a) Machines Larger Than 200 hp: Test duration shall be 10 minutes. Calculate polarization index.
 - b) Machines 200 hp or Less: Test duration shall be one minute. Calculate the dielectric-absorption ratio.
 - 2) Test protective relay devices.
 - 3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.

- 4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
- 5) Perform vibration test for each main bearing cap.
- 6) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.
2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here, including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.
 - a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
 - b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
 - c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
 - d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
6. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
7. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage at 25 and 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.

D. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.

E. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the past 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.

F. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

G. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.

H. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

I. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

J. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations, and retest until specified requirements are met.

K. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION 263213.13

SECTION 263600 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes automatic transfer switches rated 600 V and less.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, and installed features and devices.
 - 2. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, power sources, and load.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Source quality control reports.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 12 months from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 110.
- D. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.
- E. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
 - 1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
 - 2. Short-time withstand capability for three cycles.
- G. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.

- H. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- I. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection to both power sources unless closed transition.
- J. Service-Rated Transfer Switch:
 - 1. Comply with UL 869A and UL 489.
 - 2. Provide terminals for bonding the grounding electrode conductor to the grounded service conductor.
 - 3. In systems with a neutral, the bonding connection shall be on the neutral bus.
 - 4. Provide removable link for temporary separation of the service and load grounded conductors.
 - 5. Surge Protective Device: Service rated.
 - 6. Service Disconnecting Means: Externally operated, manual mechanically actuated.
- K. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable with printed markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
 - 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
 - 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
 - 4. Accessible via front access.
- M. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 1, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. ASCO
- B. Caterpillar
- C. Cummins
- D. Kohler
- E. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- F. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
 - 1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
 - 2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
 - 3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
 - 4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 - 5. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 - 6. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
 - 7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
 - 8. Ground bar.
 - 9. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.
- G. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
 - 1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
- H. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:
 - 1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.

2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of NormalSource: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
 - a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
 - b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
11. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
 - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
 - b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
 - c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment according to UL 1008. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 1. For each of the tests required by UL 1008, performed on representative devices, for emergency systems. Include results of test for the following conditions:
 - a. Overvoltage.
 - b. Undervoltage.
 - c. Loss of supply voltage.
 - d. Reduction of supply voltage.
 - e. Alternative supply voltage or frequency is at minimum acceptable values.
 - f. Temperature rise.
 - g. Dielectric voltage-withstand; before and after short-circuit test.
 - h. Overload.
 - i. Contact opening.
 - j. Endurance.
 - k. Short circuit.
 - l. Short-time current capability.
 - m. Receptacle withstand capability.
 - n. Insulating base and supports damage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Identify components according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

- C. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.
- D. Comply with NECA 1.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator sets, control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
- D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- F. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
- G. Route and brace conductors according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not obscure manufacturer's markings and labels.
- H. Final connections to equipment shall be made with liquidtight, flexible metallic conduit no more than 18 inches (457 mm) in length.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
 - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
 - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
 - f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
 - g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
 - h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods, or both:
 - 1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.
 - i. Perform manual transfer operation.
 - j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
 - k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
 - l. Inspect control power transformers.
 - 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
 - 2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings.
 - 3) Verify correct functioning of drawout disconnecting contacts, grounding contacts, and interlocks.
 - 2. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground.
 - b. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test. Compare measured values with manufacturer's acceptable values.
 - c. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
 - d. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
 - e. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
 - f. Perform automatic transfer tests.
 - g. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:

- 1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
 - 2) Engine start sequence.
 - 3) Time delay on transfer.
 - 4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
 - 5) Automatic transfer operation.
 - 6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
 - 7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
 - 8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.
3. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.
 - a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
 - b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
 - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
 - d. Perform manual transfer operation.
 4. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
 - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
 - b. Verify time-delay settings.
 - c. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
 - d. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
- B. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
 - C. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
 - D. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 - E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
 - F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.
- B. Training shall include testing ground-fault protective devices and instructions to determine when the ground-fault system shall be retested. Include instructions on where ground-fault sensors are located and how to avoid negating the ground-fault protection scheme during testing and circuit modifications.
- C. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 263600

SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
 - 2. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.3 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Ambient Temperature: 41 to 104 deg F.
 - 1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
- B. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
 - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI.
- C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.
- D. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- E. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- F. California Title 24 compliant.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
 - 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Steel:

1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A568/A568M for sheet steel.

C. Stainless Steel:

1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/240M.

D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.

E. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

2.4 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.

2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
 - C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 265119

SECTION 270010 - SUPPLEMENTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Supplemental requirements generally applicable to the Work specified in Division 27.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Work specified in the following Division 26 sections are related to Work specified in Division 27:
 - a. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for abbreviations and acronyms for electrical terms and units of measure, abbreviations and acronyms for electrical raceway types, abbreviations and acronyms for electrical cable types, definitions, and additional coordination drawing submittal requirements.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Communications:
 - 1. LAN: Local area network.
 - 2. PoE: Power over Ethernet.
 - 3. POTS: Plain old telephone service. See "public switched telephone network."
 - 4. TCP/IP: Transmission control protocol/Internet protocol.
 - 5. WAN: Wide area network.
- B. Definitions for Communications:
 - 1. Calling Party Control (CPC): A momentary break in phone line loop current, which is used to signal voicemail and other automated telephone company services that distant party has hung up.
 - 2. Private Branch Exchange (PBX): Analog telephone switch that routes calls internal to a business or organization so a direct external line for each phone is unnecessary.
 - 3. Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN): Analog telephone technology that uses twisted-pair cables from a telephone-provider central office for the transmission medium. PSTN refers to the telephone network; POTS refers to the individual subscriber line.
 - 4. Remote Office Phone System (ROPS): VoIP system that allows phones for a business or organization located anywhere in the world with internet connectivity to behave similar to phones connected to a PBX.
 - 5. Ringer Equivalence Number (REN): The loading effect of a single traditional telephone ringing circuit. TIA-968 defines REN 1 as an impedance of 7000 Ω at 20 Hz (Type A ringer) or 8000 Ω from 15 Hz to 68 Hz (Type B ringer). The sum of the RENs for all devices on a subscriber line circuit may not exceed the maximum permitted REN for the subscriber line.
 - 6. Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP): Digital telephone packet technology that uses the internet for its transmission medium.

1.3 COORDINATION

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Communications Preconstruction Conference: Schedule conference with Architect and Owner not later than 10 days after notice to proceed. Agenda topics include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Installation schedule for communications systems.
 - 2. Value analysis proposals and requests for substitution of communications equipment.
 - 3. Utility services work coordination and monitoring service requests.
 - 4. Commissioning activities.
 - 5. Sustainability activities.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Submit multidiscipline coordination drawings depicting communications equipment, devices, cabling, conduit, and duct banks in accordance with requirements specified in Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical."

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Installation schedule for communications systems.
- B. Qualification statements.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.
- B. Software.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications: Prepare and submit qualification statements for the following entities performing Work on Project:
 - 1. Qualified Regional Manufacturer: Manufacturer, possessing qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," that maintains a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency on-site repairs to Project site with response time less than eight hours.
 - 2. Structural Professional Engineer: Professional engineer possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," with expertise in structural engineering.
 - 3. Communications Design Professional: Design professional possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" and the following:
 - a. Expertise in design of communications infrastructure and distribution equipment.
 - b. BICSI Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD) certification.
 - 4. Communications Cable Installer: Entity possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" and the following:
 - a. Training and manufacturer certification to install, splice, and terminate communications cabling.
 - b. Installation Supervisor: BICSI Technician (TECH) certification.
 - c. Copper Installers: 30 percent of employees possess BICSI Copper Installer 2 (INSTC) certification. Remaining employees possess BICSI Installer 1 (INST1) certification.
 - d. Fiber Installers: 30 percent of employees possess BICSI Optical Fiber Installer 2 (INSTF) certification. Remaining employees possess BICSI Installer 1 (INST1) certification.
 - 5. Communications Cable Testing Agency: Entity possessing active credentials from a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. On-site communications cable testing supervisor must have BICSI Technician (TECH) certification and documented training, and be experienced with testing communications equipment in accordance with BICSI testing standards.
 - 6. Structural Testing and Inspecting Agency: Entity possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" with documented training and experience with testing structural concrete, seismic controls, and wind-load controls.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTION LIMITATIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

- A. Substitution requests for communications equipment will be entertained under the following conditions:
 - 1. Notification of Contractor's intent to request substitutions for convenience must be declared during the Communications Preconstruction Conference so potential risks to system performance and construction schedule may be identified for Contractor's response in submission of the substitution request. Submission of requests for substitutions for convenience must meet the conditions and deadline specified in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" to receive approval.
 - 2. For communications equipment and systems, substitutions for cause are considered major construction risks. If it is possible that Contractor may need to request substitutions for cause because of equipment unavailability, or inability to meet construction schedule because of lead time, Contractor must declare the possibility during the Communications Preconstruction Conference to permit establishing a mitigation plan for minimizing risks to system performance and construction schedule.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Installation Schedule for Communications Systems: At preconstruction meeting, and periodically thereafter as dates change, provide schedule for installation of communications Work to Owner and Architect including, but not limited to, milestone dates for the following activities:
 - 1. Submission of specified coordination drawings.
 - 2. Submission of action submittals specified in Division 27.
 - 3. Orders placed for major equipment.
 - 4. Arrival of major equipment on-site.
 - 5. Preinstallation meetings specified in Division 27.
 - 6. Telephone and internet service outages.
 - 7. Telephone and internet service inspection and activation.
 - 8. Mockup reviews.
 - 9. Closing of walls and ceilings containing communications Work.
 - 10. System startup, testing, and commissioning activities for communications equipment.
 - 11. System startup, testing, and commissioning activities for Work specified in other divisions that depends on Work specified in Division 27.
 - 12. System startup, testing, and commissioning activities for automation systems (for example, SCADA, BMS, lighting, HVAC, fire alarm, fire pump).
 - 13. Requests for special inspections.
 - 14. Requests for inspections by authorities having jurisdiction.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF COMMUNICATIONS WORK

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in the Contract Documents or manufacturers' instructions, comply with NFPA 70, NECA NEIS 1, and BICSI N1 for installation of Work specified in Division 27. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Administrant for Communications Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to administer and perform tests and inspections on components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

3.4 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: Prepare and submit the following:
 - 1. Include emergency operation, normal operation, and preventive maintenance manuals for each system and equipment.
 - 2. Include the following information:
 - a. Manufacturer's operating specifications.
 - b. User's guides for software and hardware.
 - c. Schedule of maintenance material items recommended to be stored at Project site.
 - d. Detailed instructions covering operation under both normal and abnormal conditions.
 - e. Manufacturer's instructions for setting field-adjustable components.
 - f. Manufacturer's instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor controls.

END OF SECTION 270010

SECTION 271100 - COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Communications-circuit accessories.
- B. Products Installed, but Not Furnished, under This Section:
 - 1. Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" furnishes the following installed by this Section:
 - a. Grounding and bonding conductors.
 - b. Grounding and bonding clamps.
 - c. Grounding and bonding bushings.
 - d. Grounding and bonding hubs.
 - e. Grounding and bonding connectors.
 - f. Intersystem bonding bridge grounding connector.
 - g. Grounding and bonding busbars.
 - h. Signal reference grids.
 - 2. Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" furnishes hangers, supports, and concrete bases for communications equipment installed by this Section.
 - 3. Section 260533.16 "Boxes and Covers for Electrical Systems" furnishes the following installed by this Section:
 - a. Metallic outlet boxes, device boxes, rings, and covers.
 - b. Junction boxes and pull boxes.
 - c. Cover plates for device boxes.
 - 4. Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" furnishes labels and warning signs for communications pathways installed by this Section.
 - 5. Section 262716 "Electrical Cabinets and Enclosures" furnishes the following installed by this Section:
 - a. Cabinets and cutout boxes.
 - b. Termination boxes.
 - c. Miscellaneous enclosures.
 - d. Rack or frame systems.
 - e. Enclosure-mounted relocatable power taps.
 - 6. Section 262726.33 "General-Grade Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacles" furnishes duplex receptacles installed by this Section.
 - 7. Section 262726.51 "Connectors, Cords, and Plugs" furnishes pendant flexible cords and connectors installed by this Section.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 270010 "Supplemental Requirements for Communications" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 3. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for installation of cable pathways serving communications equipment room fittings installed under this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. PBB: Primary bonding busbar; located in main distribution frame room, ideally near electrical service entrance.
- B. RBB: Rack bonding busbar; located in equipment cabinets and racks.
- C. SBB: Secondary bonding busbar; located in intermediate distribution frame rooms.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at [Project site] <Insert location>.

- B. Preinstallation Coordination Meeting(s): For communications equipment room planning. Conduct meeting(s) at Project site before start of construction.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Communications equipment room drawings, diagrams, and supporting documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMMUNICATIONS-CIRCUIT ACCESSORIES

- A. Description: This category covers devices intended for connecting communications circuits in accordance with Article 800 of NFPA 70.
- B. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Listing Criteria:
 - a. For Communications Circuits: UL CCN DUXR; including UL 1863 and UL 467.
 - b. For Audio/Video, Data, and Signaling Circuits: UL CCN DUXR; including UL 1977 and UL 467.
- C. UL DUXR - 66-Style or 110-Style Cross-Connect Frame:
 - 1. Options:
 - a. Connection Method: 8P8C Ethernet jack.
- D. UL DUXR - Patch Panel:
 - 1. Options:
 - a. Distribution Port Quantity: 48.
 - b. Cable Type: Cat. 6a.
 - c. Mounting: Equipment rack.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Shop Drawings: Prepare and submit the following:
 - 1. Communications Equipment Room Drawings, Diagrams, and Supporting Documents:
 - a. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - b. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - c. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Indicate workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
 - d. Switchboards, Panelboards, and Safety Switches: Indicate workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
 - e. Grounding and Bonding: Indicate location of busbars and their mounting details showing standoff insulators and wall mounting brackets.
 - f. Cable Trays, Large Raceways, Ducts, and Piping: Indicate elevation and route of vertical and horizontal cable trays, raceways or ducts larger than 2 inch (50 mm) wide, and fire-suppression piping located inside communications equipment room.
 - g. Luminaires: Indicate elevation, orientation, and size of luminaires inside the communications equipment room for coordination with cable trays, equipment racks, cabinets, and other equipment.
 - h. Access Panels: Indicate locations, dimensions, and clearances required to open access panels in ducts, walls, or ceilings inside communications equipment room.
 - i. Controls: Indicate locations of sensors, switches, and push-buttons for HVAC, fire suppression, fire alarm, and standby power.
 - j. Adjust configurations and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize configurations and space requirements of communications equipment.
 - k. Adjust configurations and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in equipment room.
 - l. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

- B. Contact telecommunications service provider and arrange for installation of demarcation point, protected entrance terminals, and a housing when so directed by service provider.

3.2 FIELD-FABRICATION OF FITTINGS FOR MAIN DISTRIBUTION FRAME ROOM OR SPACE

- A. Description: Main distribution frame room or space usually contains demarcation point for communications service provider with central servers and communications equipment distributing to entire facility.
- B. Reference Standards for Installation: Unless more stringent installation requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with the following:
 - 1. Designated Critical Operations Areas: Comply with Article 708 of NFPA 70.
 - 2. Communications Systems: Comply with Ch. 8 of NFPA 70 and with BICSI N1.
 - 3. Grounding and Bonding: Comply with Article 250 of NFPA 70 and with BICSI N3.
 - 4. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Provide the following specified products in main distribution frame room or space:
 - 1. Quantity as indicated on Drawings of equipment backing panel.
 - a. Install from 6 inch (150 mm) to 8 ft, 6 inch (2588 mm) above finished floor. If plywood is fire rated, ensure that fire-rating stamp is visible after installation.
 - 2. One PBB.
 - 3. One 19 inch enclosed equipment rack with RBB and enclosure-mounted relocatable power tap.
 - 4. One 110-style cross-connect frame.
 - 5. Quantity of patch panels to accommodate the number of devices indicated on the plans plus 25% spare capacity.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. After installation, protect communications equipment room fittings from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 271100

SECTION 271513 - COMMUNICATIONS COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Category 6a twisted pair cable.
 - 2. Twisted pair cable hardware.
 - 3. Cable management system.

1.2 COPPER HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

- A. Horizontal cabling system shall provide interconnections between Distributor A, Distributor B, or Distributor C, and the equipment outlet, otherwise known as "Cabling Subsystem 1," in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of horizontal cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for horizontal-to-horizontal cross-connection.
 - 1. TIA-568-C.1 requires that a minimum of two equipment outlets be installed for each work area.
 - 2. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications equipment outlet.
 - 3. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.
- B. A work area is approximately 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m), and includes the components that extend from the equipment outlets to the station equipment.
- C. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet (90 m). This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet (4.9 m) to the workstation equipment or in the horizontal cross-connect.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Reviewed and stamped by RCDD.
 - 1. System Labeling Schedules:
 - a. Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
 - 2. Cabling administration Drawings and printouts.
 - 3. Wiring diagrams and installation details of telecommunications equipment, to show location and layout of telecommunications equipment.
- C. Twisted pair cable testing plan.
- D. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
 - 1. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For RCDD, Installer, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- C. Source quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
 - 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 - 2. Program Software Backup: On USB media.
 - 3. Device address list.
 - 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 - 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and cabling administration Drawings by an RCDD.
 - 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 - 3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Testing agency must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA-568-C.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.
- B. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA-569-D.
- C. Grounding: Comply with TIA-607-B.

2.2 GENERAL CABLE CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with the applicable standard and NFPA 70 for the following types:
 - 1. Communications, Plenum Rated:
 - a. Type CMP complying with UL 1685 or Type CMP in listed plenum communications raceway or Type CMP in listed cable routing assembly.
 - b. Type CM, Type CMG, Type CMP, Type CMR, or Type CMX in metallic conduit installed according to NFPA 70, Article 300.22, "Wiring in Ducts, Plenums, and Other Air-Handling Spaces."
 - 2. Communications, Non-Plenum Rated:
 - a. Type CMP or Type CMR in listed plenum or riser communications raceway.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- C. RoHS compliant.

2.3 CATEGORY 6a TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6a cable at frequencies up to 500 MHz.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Belden Inc.
 - 2. Berk-Tek, a Leviton Company.
 - 3. CommScope, Inc.
 - 4. General Cable; Prysmian Group North America.
 - 5. Mohawk; a division of Belden Networking, Inc.
 - 6. Superior Essex Inc.; subsidiary of LS Corp.
- C. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6a cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.

- E. Shielding/Screening: .
- F. Cable Rating: Plenum.
- G. Jacket: Tthermoplastic.

2.4 TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AMP NETCONNECT; a TE Connectivity Ltd. company.
 - 2. Belden Inc.
 - 3. Berk-Tek, a Leviton Company.
 - 4. CommScope, Inc.
 - 5. General Cable; Prysmian Group North America.
 - 6. Hubbell Premise Wiring; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - 7. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- C. General Requirements for Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
 - 1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6a.
 - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
 - 3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain twisted pair cable hardware from single source from single manufacturer.
- E. Connecting Blocks:
 - 1. 110-style IDC for Category 6a.
 - 2. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
- F. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
 - 1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
- G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
 - 1. Features:
 - a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
 - b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
 - c. Replaceable connectors.
 - d. 24 or 48 ports.
 - 2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch (483 mm) equipment racks.
 - 3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
- H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 48-inch (1200-mm) lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.
 - 1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
- I. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
 - 1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
 - 2. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
 - 3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
 - 1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair, 100-ohm, unshielded or shielded twisted pair cable.
 - 2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or cover plate.
 - 3. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
 - 4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.

- K. Cover Plate:
 - 1. Four port, vertical single gang cover plates designed to mount to single gang wall boxes.
 - 2. Metal Cover Plate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Section 260533.16 "Boxes and Covers for Electrical Systems."
 - 3. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
 - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.
- L. Legend:
 - 1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
 - 2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.5 CABLE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

- A. Description: Computer-based cable management system, with integrated database capabilities.
- B. Document physical characteristics by recording the network, TIA details, and connections between equipment and cable.
- C. Information shall be presented in database view, schematic plans, or technical drawings.
- D. System shall interface with the following testing and recording devices:
 - 1. Direct upload tests from circuit testing instrument into the personal computer.
 - 2. Direct download circuit labeling into labeling printer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF TWISTED PAIR HORIZONTAL CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA/BICSI 568.
- B. Routing: Install cables in raceways and cable trays, except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, attics, and gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables, except in unfinished spaces.
 - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.
- D. General Requirements for Cabling:
 - 1. Comply with TIA-568-C.1.
 - 2. Comply with BICSI's Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section.
 - 3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Do not untwist twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
 - 5. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
 - 6. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 - 7. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, prevent straining connections, and prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
 - 8. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Cable Termination Practices" Section. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
 - 9. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation, and replace it with new cable.

10. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
11. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot- (3-m-) long service loop on each end of cable.
12. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI Information Transport Systems Installation Methods Manual, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems," "Pulling and Installing Cable" Section. Monitor cable pull tensions.

E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

F. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with recommendations from BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual" and TIA-569-D for separating unshielded copper communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.

3.2 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."

C. Comply with "Firestopping Systems" Article in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."

3.3 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Install grounding according to the "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" chapter in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual."

C. Comply with TIA-607-B and NECA/BICSI-607.

D. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall, allowing at least a 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground, using a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor.

E. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than a No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA-606-B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA-606-B for Class 2 level of administration.

C. Equipment grounding conductors.

D. Cable and Wire Identification:

1. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if wire color is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
4. Label each terminal strip, and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
 - a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group, extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device, with the name and number of a particular device.
 - b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.

5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and -connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
- E. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type, with a printing area and font color that contrast with cable jacket color but still comply with TIA-606-B requirements for the following:
 1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Visually inspect jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
 3. Test twisted pair cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
- B. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similarly to Table 10.1 in BICSI's "Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual," or shall be transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, printed, and submitted.
- C. Nonconforming Work:
 1. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 2. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.
- E. Manufacturer Services:
 1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to [support] [supervise] field tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 271513

SECTION 280500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
 - 2. Sleeve seals.
 - 3. Grout.
 - 4. Common electronic safety and security installation requirements.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.

- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electronic safety and security equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY PENETRATIONS

- A. Electronic safety and security penetrations occur when raceways, pathways, cables, wireways, or cable trays penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.
- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
 - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electronic safety and security installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 280500

SECTION 280513 - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Low-voltage control cabling.
 - 2. Control-circuit conductors.
 - 3. Fire alarm wire and cable.
 - 4. Identification products.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. For coaxial cable, include the following installation data for each type used:
 - a. Nominal OD.
 - b. Minimum bending radius.
 - c. Maximum pulling tension.
- B. Shop Drawings: Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Maintenance data.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PATHWAYS

- A. Support of Open Cabling: NRTL labeled for support of cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
 - 1. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
 - 2. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
 - 3. Straps and other devices.
- B. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.

2.2 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

- A. Paired Lock Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
 - 1. 1 pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.

- 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
- B. Plenum-Type, Paired Lock Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. 1 pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
- C. Paired Lock Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
 - 1. 1 pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
- D. Plenum-Type, Paired Lock Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. 1 pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. Plastic jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

2.3 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway complying with UL 83.
- B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway complying with UL 83.
- C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or TF, complying with UL 83.

2.4 FIRE ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Comtran Corp.
 - 2. Draka USA.
 - 3. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
 - 4. Rockbestos-Suprenant Cable Corporation.
 - 5. West Penn Wire/CDT; a division of Cable Design Technologies.
- B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
- C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, size as recommended by system manufacturer.
 - 1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a 2-hour rating.
- D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation.
 - 1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum.
 - 2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum.
 - 3. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket with red identifier stripe, NRTL listed for fire alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a 2-hour rating.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Brady Corporation
 - 2. HellermannTyton.
 - 3. Kroy LLC.
 - 4. Panduit Corp.

- B. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory sweep test coaxial cables at frequencies from 5 MHz to 1 GHz. Sweep test shall test the frequency response, or attenuation over frequency, of a cable by generating a voltage whose frequency is varied through the specified frequency range and graphing the results.
- C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

- A. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A-7.
- B. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems." for installation of conduits and wireways.
- D. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
- E. Pathway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
 3. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
 4. Extend conduits 3 inches above finished floor.
 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- F. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
 1. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets or terminals.
 2. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, and terminals.
 3. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
 4. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 5. Pulling Cable: Do not exceed manufacturer's instructions as to allowable pulling tension. Monitor cable pull tensions.
- C. Open-Cable Installation:
 1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.

2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.
 3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
- D. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
 2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.

3.3 FIRE ALARM WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.
- B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal raceway according to Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
- C. Wiring Method:
1. Cables and raceways used for fire alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
 2. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of 2-hour, fire-rated fire alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is permitted.
 3. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire alarm cables may be installed in the same cable or raceway as signaling line circuits.
- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- F. Color-Coding: Color-code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- G. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent the receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
- H. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch conduit between the fire alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

3.4 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No. 14 AWG.
 2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
 3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm and signal circuits, No. 12 AWG.

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding.
 - 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding, and bonding.
- B. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 280513

SECTION 283111 - DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fire-alarm control unit.
 - 2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
 - 3. System smoke detectors.
 - 4. Heat detectors.
 - 5. Notification appliances.
 - 6. Device guards.
 - 7. Magnetic door holders.
 - 8. Remote annunciator.
 - 9. Addressable interface device.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" for cables and conductors for fire-alarm systems.

C.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.
- B. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.
- C. HLI: High Level Interface.
- D. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
- E. PC: Personal computer.
- F. VESDA: Very Early Smoke-Detection Apparatus.
- G. Pathway: Any circuit, conductor, optic fiber, radio carrier, or other means connecting two or more locations.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
 - 4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
 - 5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
 - 6. Include battery-size calculations.
 - 7. Include input/output matrix.

8. Include statement from manufacturer that all equipment and components have been tested as a system and meet all requirements in this Specification and in NFPA 72.
9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
10. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
11. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.

C. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
 - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
 - b. NICET-certified, fire-alarm technician; Level III minimum.
 - c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Drawings showing the location of each notification appliance and smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the device.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances.
3. Indicate audible appliances required to produce square wave signal per NFPA 72.

E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
 - d. Riser diagram.
 - e. Device addresses.
 - f. Record copy of site-specific software.
 - g. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
 - 1) Equipment tested.
 - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
 - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
 - 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
 - 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
 - h. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
 - i. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps for Strobe Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than one unit.
2. Smoke Detectors: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.

3. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked or tamperproofed components.
4. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: One of each type installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level III technician.
- C. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Noncoded, UL-certified, non-proprietary addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and voice/strobe evacuation.
- B. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.
- C. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices:
 1. Manual stations.
 2. Heat detectors.
 3. Smoke detectors.
 4. Duct smoke detectors.
 5. Carbon monoxide detectors.
 6. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
- B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:
 1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances, including voice evacuation notices.
 2. Identify alarm and specific initiating device at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
 3. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
 4. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
 5. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
 6. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
 7. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
 8. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
 9. Activate elevator power shunt trip.
 10. Activate emergency lighting control.
 11. Record events in the system memory.
 12. Record events by the system printer.
- C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
 1. Valve supervisory switch.
 2. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.
 3. Independent fire-detection and -suppression systems.
 4. User disabling of zones or individual devices.
 5. Loss of communication with any panel on the network.

- D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
 2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
 3. Loss of communication with any addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
 4. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
 5. Ground or a single break in internal circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
 6. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
 7. Break in standby battery circuitry.
 8. Failure of battery charging.
 9. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
 10. Voice signal amplifier failure.
- E. System Supervisory Signal Actions:
1. Initiate notification appliances.
 2. Identify specific device initiating the event at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
 3. Record the event on system printer.

2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
1. Notifier.
 2. Edwards (United Technologies Corp).
- B. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:
1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864.
 - a. System software and programs shall be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
 - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
 - c. Provide communication between the FACP and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
 - d. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. The system shall require no manual input to initialize in the event of a complete power down condition. The FACP shall provide a minimum 500-event history log.
 2. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: The FACP shall indicate which communication zones have been silenced and shall provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
 3. Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: The FACP shall be listed for releasing service.
 4. LCD screen with readout of alarms.
- C. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 80 characters, minimum.
 2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.
- D. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:
1. Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.
 2. Serial Interfaces:
 - a. One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module (printer port).
 - b. One USB or RS 232 port for PC configuration.
 - c. One RS 232 port for voice evacuation interface.
- E. Smoke-Alarm Verification:
1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
 2. Activate an approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
 3. Record events by the system printer.
 4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
 5. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.
- F. Notification-Appliance Circuit:

1. Audible appliances shall sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
 2. Where notification appliances provide signals to sleeping areas, the alarm signal shall be a 520-Hz square wave with an intensity 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level, or at least 75 dBA, whichever is greater, measured at the pillow.
 3. Visual alarm appliances shall flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in the same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.
- G. Elevator Recall:
1. Elevator recall shall be initiated only by one of the following alarm-initiating devices:
 - a. Elevator lobby detectors except the lobby detector on the designated floor.
 - b. Smoke detector in elevator machine room.
 - c. Smoke detectors in elevator hoistway.
 2. Elevator controller shall be programmed to move the cars to the alternate recall floor if lobby detectors located on the designated recall floors are activated.
 3. Water-flow alarm connected to sprinkler in an elevator shaft and elevator machine room shall shut down elevators associated with the location without time delay.
 - a. Water-flow switch associated with the sprinkler in the elevator pit may have a delay to allow elevators to move to the designated floor.
- H. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at doors in smoke-barrier walls shall be connected to fire-alarm system.
- I. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.
- J. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided as a special module that is part of fire-alarm control unit.
1. Indicate number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of announcements by use of the central-control microphone. Amplifiers shall comply with UL 1711.
 - a. Allow the application of, and evacuation signal to, indicated number of zones and, at the same time, allow voice paging to the other zones selectively or in any combination.
 - b. Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
 - c. Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
 - d. Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification-appliance circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
 2. Status Annunciator: Indicate the status of various voice/alarm speaker zones.
 3. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators shall automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.
- K. Printout of Events: On receipt of signal, print alarm, supervisory, and trouble events. Identify zone, device, and function. Include type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble) and date and time of occurrence. Differentiate alarm signals from all other printed indications. Also print system reset event, including same information for device, location, date, and time. Commands initiate the printing of a list of existing alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in the system and a historical log of events.
- L. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory signals and supervisory communicator transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.
1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.
- M. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.
- N. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.

2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:
1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
 2. Detectors shall be four-wire type.
 3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
 5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
 6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
 7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control unit.
 - a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg F per minute.
 - b. Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F.
 - c. Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
 - d. Sensitivity levels based on time of day.
- B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:
1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- C. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.
1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
 3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
 4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
 5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
 6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.6 CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS

- A. General: Carbon monoxide detector listed for connection to fire-alarm system.
1. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting.

2. Testable by introducing test carbon monoxide into the sensing cell.
3. Detector shall provide alarm contacts and trouble contacts.
4. Detector shall send trouble alarm when nearing end-of-life, power supply problems, or internal faults.
5. Comply with UL 2075.
6. Locate, mount, and wire according to manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Provide means for addressable connection to fire-alarm system.
8. Test button simulates an alarm condition.

2.7 HEAT DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.
 1. Temperature sensors shall test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.
- B. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F per minute unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
- C. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg.
 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

2.8 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Individually addressed, connected to a signaling-line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
 1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- C. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol. Provide weather proof rated horns where indicated.
- D. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights complying with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch high letters on the lens.
 1. Rated Light Output:
 - a. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
 2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
 3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
 4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
 5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
 6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, red.
- E. Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:
 1. Comply with UL 1480.
 2. Speakers for Voice Notification: Locate speakers for voice notification to provide the intelligibility requirements of the "Notification Appliances" and "Emergency Communications Systems" chapters in NFPA 72.
 3. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
 4. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
 5. Mounting: Surface mounted and bidirectional.
 6. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.

2.9 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

- A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.
 - 1. Electromagnets: Require no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf holding force.
 - 2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Rating: 24-V ac or dc.
 - 4. Rating: 120-V ac.
- B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

2.10 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
 - 1. Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

2.11 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. General:
 - 1. Include address-setting means on the module.
 - 2. Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type.
 - 3. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.
- B. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- C. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall and to circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown.
 - 1. Allow the control panel to switch the relay contacts on command.
 - 2. Have a minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.
- D. Control Module:
 - 1. Operate notification devices.
 - 2. Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.

2.12 SYSTEM PRINTER

- A. Printer shall be listed and labeled as an integral part of fire-alarm system.

2.13 DEVICE GUARDS

- A. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.
 - 1. Factory fabricated and furnished by device manufacturer.
 - 2. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."
 - 1. Devices placed in service before all other trades have completed cleanup shall be replaced.
 - 2. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches above the finished floor.
- C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:
 - 1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches of the exit doorway.
 - 2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
 - 3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between 42 inches and 48 inches above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
 - 1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
 - 2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
 - 3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.
 - 4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex A in NFPA 72.
 - 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inches from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
 - 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.
- E. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inches long shall be supported at both ends.
 - 1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- G. Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location. Do not install smoke detectors in sprinklered elevator shafts.
- H. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- I. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches below the ceiling. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

3.3 PATHWAYS

- A. Plenum rated cable shall be used for all pathways except where cabling is in conduit.
- B. Pathways above recessed accessible locations may be routed exposed.
- C. Pathways above inaccessible locations shall be installed in EMT.

- D. Pathways in exposed areas shall be routed in EMT and be painted red enamel.
- E. Pathways from main fire alarm control panel to each zone/building shall be routed underground to lower level mechanical or electrical room. Initial auxiliary panel(s) shall be located in these rooms. All cabling within the building zone shall be installed as specified above.

3.4 ZONES

- A. Provide a fire alarm zone for each building that is identified on architectural code plans (CP Series). Fire alarm activation and notification by zone/building.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Section 087100 "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before making connections.
- B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 36 inches from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
 - 1. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
 - 2. Magnetically held-open doors.
 - 3. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
 - 4. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
 - 5. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.
 - 6. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
 - 7. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt-trip breaker.
 - 8. Supervisory connections at fire-extinguisher locations.
 - 9. Alarm-initiating connection to kitchen hood fire extinguishing system.
 - 10. Fire alarm system to be interfaced with intercommunications system to shunt audio from the intercom system when the fire alarm system is in an alarm condition. Provide fire alarm system with relay output for interface connections as required.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.7 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.
- B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
 - a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.

- b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
 - 2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
 - 4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
 - F. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 - G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 - H. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
 - I. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

3.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 1. Include visual inspections according to the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 2. Perform tests in the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 3. Perform tests per the "Testing Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

3.10 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

END OF SECTION 283111

SECTION 311000 - SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
 - 2. Removing existing vegetation.
 - 3. Clearing and grubbing.
 - 4. Stripping and stockpiling topsoil.
 - 5. Removing above- and below-grade site improvements.
 - 6. Temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary utility services, construction and support facilities, security and protection facilities, and temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.
 - 2. Division 01 Section "Execution" for field engineering and surveying.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.
- B. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.
- C. Topsoil: Top layer of the soil profile consisting of existing native surface topsoil or existing in-place surface soil and is the zone where plant roots grow. Its appearance is generally friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other nonsoil materials.
- D. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings.
- E. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings.
- F. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

- A. Except for stripped topsoil and other materials indicated to be stockpiled or otherwise remain Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site. All stripped topsoil shall remain onsite and be distributed onsite per the Construction Manager's direction. See Earth Moving specification for soil material instruction.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
 - 1. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or videotape.
 - 2. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plants designated to remain.
- B. Record Drawings: Identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Salvageable Improvements: Carefully remove items indicated to be salvaged and store on Owner's premises.
- C. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service and appropriate City and County agencies for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- D. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control and plant-protection measures are in place.
- E. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
 - 1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
 - 2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
 - 3. Foot traffic.
 - 4. Erection of sheds or structures.
 - 5. Impoundment of water.
 - 6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
 - 7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
 - 8. Sediment encroachment.
- F. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
- G. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.
- H. Soil Stripping, Handling, and Stockpiling: Perform only when the topsoil is dry or slightly moist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Satisfactory Soil Material: Requirements for satisfactory soil material shall be provided by the Geotechnical Engineer.
 - 1. Obtain approved borrow soil material off-site when satisfactory soil material is not available on-site. Coordinate with Geotechnical engineer for acceptable soil material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Locate and clearly identify trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain.
- C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
 - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

- A. Provide temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.
- C. Inspect, maintain, and repair erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- D. Contractor to keep inspection logs of erosion control measures and update provided Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP).

3.3 EXISTING UTILITIES

- A. Contractor to arrange for disconnecting and sealing indicated utilities that serve existing structures before site clearing, when requested by Contractor.
 - 1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped that serve existing houses before proceeding with site clearing.
 - 2. Utility service shall be maintained to the existing building during construction of the proposed building. Contractor shall coordinate with utility service providers to provide temporary service to the existing building as necessary. See demolition notes on drawings.
- B. Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap utilities serving existing houses. Completely remove service lines, meters, poles, etc. associated with utility services.
 - 1. Arrange with utility companies to shut off indicated utilities.
 - 2. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
- C. Locate, identify, and disconnect utilities indicated to be abandoned in place.
- D. Interrupting Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Construction Managers and Owners written permission.

3.4 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions, trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction.
- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
 - 1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches, and compact each layer to a density per requirements.

3.5 TOPSOIL STRIPPING

- A. Remove sod and grass before stripping topsoil.
- B. Strip topsoil in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other waste materials.
 - 1. Remove subsoil and nonsoil materials from topsoil, including clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; trash, debris, weeds, roots, and other waste materials.
 - 2. Geotechnical engineer to monitor stripping operations to observe that all unsuitable materials have been removed.
- C. Stockpile topsoil away from edge of excavations without intermixing with subsoil. Grade and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust and erosion by water.
 - 1. Do not stockpile topsoil within protection zones.
 - 2. Dispose of surplus topsoil. Surplus topsoil is that which exceeds quantity indicated to be stockpiled or reused.
 - 3. Stockpile surplus topsoil to allow for respreading deeper topsoil.
- D. Remove all topsoil and all organic material from proposed building footprint and pavement areas. Excavate as deep as necessary to ensure all organic material has been removed.

3.6 SITE IMPROVEMENTS

- A. Remove existing above- and below-grade improvements as indicated from the site. See demolition notes on drawings.
- B. Remove slabs, paving, curbs, gutters, and aggregate base as indicated.
 - 1. Unless existing full-depth joints coincide with line of demolition, neatly saw-cut along line of existing pavement to remain before removing adjacent existing pavement. Saw-cut faces vertically.
 - 2. Paint cut ends of steel reinforcement in concrete to remain with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions. Keep paint off surfaces that will remain exposed.

3.7 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus unsuitable soil material, unsuitable topsoil, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
- B. Separate recyclable materials produced during site clearing from other nonrecyclable materials. Store or stockpile without intermixing with other materials and transport them to recycling facilities. Do not interfere with other Project work.

END OF SECTION 311000

SECTION 312000 – EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.
 - 2. Preparing subgrade for pavements and grass areas.
 - 3. General earthwork and excavation.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 311000 "Site Clearing" for site stripping, grubbing, stripping and stockpiling topsoil, and removal of above- and below-grade improvements and utilities.

1.3 UNCLASSIFIED SITE

- A. All site work for this project is considered "unclassified." The term "unclassified" excavation shall be defined as meaning the site contractor bears the entire risk of the soil quantities and/or types (e.g. rock, clay, peat, silt, shale, etc.) encountered above the bottom of required excavations and over-excavated / treated soils areas. Above the bottom of required excavations, the site contractor shall bear the entire cost of such additional work in the event it becomes necessary for unsuitable soils to be handled, removed from the site, or for suitable fill material to be imported to the site. This definition of "unclassified" supersedes any contrary definitions or statements which may be contained in the specifications, plans, or other contract documents. The unclassified site shall include all work above the bottom of required excavations and/or required soil remediation/replacement.
- B. The contractor shall be responsible to determine earthwork quantities. All import or export of earth material shall be the responsibility of the contractor at his expense.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
 - 1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
 - 2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- C. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.
- D. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
- E. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.
- F. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
- G. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.

- H. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:
 - 1. Geotextiles.
 - 2. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
 - 3. Warning tapes.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill according to Geotechnical Engineer requirements.
- D. Preexcavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earth moving operations. Submit before earth moving begins.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 and ASTM D 3740 for testing indicated.
- B. Preexcavation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth moving operations.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing earth moving indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.
 - 1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Architect.
- C. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service and City and County agencies for area where Project is located before beginning earth moving operations.
- D. Do not commence earth moving operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures, are in place.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.
- B. Satisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GW, GP, GM, SW, SP, and SM according to ASTM D2487, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 3 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.

- C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D2487, or a combination of these groups.
 - 1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.
- D. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural stone or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.
- E. Sub-drainage Aggregate: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural stone, clean with no fines. Aggregate range shall be $\frac{1}{2}$ " to $\frac{3}{4}$ ".

2.2 GEOTEXTILES

- A. Separation Geotextile: Woven geotextile fabric, manufactured for separation applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation less than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
 - 1. Survivability: Class 3; AASHTO M 288.
 - 2. Grab Tensile Strength: 120 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
 - 3. Sewn Seam Strength: 222 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
 - 4. Tear Strength: 50 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
 - 5. Puncture Strength: 90 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
 - 6. Apparent Opening Size: No. 70 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
 - 7. Permittivity: 1.7 second-1, minimum; ASTM D 4491.
 - 8. UV Stability: 70 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:
 - 1. Red: Electric.
 - 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
 - 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
 - 4. Blue: Water systems.
 - 5. Green: Sewer systems.
- B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored as follows:
 - 1. Red: Electric.
 - 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
 - 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
 - 4. Blue: Water systems.
 - 5. Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth moving operations.
- B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth moving operations.
- C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
 - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.

3.3 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives: Do not use explosives.

3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Evaluate surfaces under future walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades, and excavate unsuitable materials as recommended by the geotechnical engineer.

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
 - 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Clearance: As indicated on plans.

3.7 PAVEMENT SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Notify testing agency when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If Geotech Engineer determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- C. Proof-roll subgrade below proposed pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades. Proof-roll within two days of paving operations.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 - 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed to the proper moisture content and density.
 - 3. After proof rolling and repairing deep subgrade deficiencies, the entire subgrade should be scarified to a depth of 8 inches and uniformly compacted to at least 95% of the standard proctor maximum dry density to provide a uniform subgrade for pavement construction. Moisture content and density of subgrade to be checked within two days prior to the commencement of paving operations.

- D. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, without additional compensation.
- E. Subgrades under pavements and building pads shall be free of all organic material.

3.8 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
 - 1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.9 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
 - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
 - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
 - 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
 - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
 - 5. Removing trash and debris.
 - 6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
 - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.10 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- C. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.
- D. Install a clay plug around pipes within 5' of the building face to prevent water migration through the trench into the building. Plug material should consist of clay compacted at a water content at or above the soils optimum water content.
- E. Utility trenches should be backfilled per the requirements of the plan details.

3.11 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in 9 inch loose lifts and compacted to at least 95% of the materials max dry density and moisture control as recommended by the geotechnical testing representative.
- C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- D. The exposed grade prior to fill being placed shall be scarified to a minimum depth of 12" and the moisture content should be adjusted to within the range recommended for structural fill. The material should then be proof-rolled and compacted per the project requirements.
- E. Bench existing slopes of 5:1 or greater where fill is to be placed.

3.12 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction as recommended by the geotechnical testing representative.
 - 1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
 - 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material not meeting moisture requirements.

3.13 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials to requirements determined by Geotechnical Engineer.
- D. Utility trenches – compaction testing to be performed every 200 cubic yards at backfill or each lift within 200 linear feet of trench, whichever is less.

3.14 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
 - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
 - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 2. Walks: Plus or minus 1/4 inch.
 - 3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/4 inch.

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. Determine prior to placement of fill that site has been prepared in compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Determine that fill material and maximum lift thickness comply with requirements.
 - 3. Determine, at the required frequency, that in-place density of compacted fill complies with requirements.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- D. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.16 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.

- B. Install erosion control measures as indicated on the plans. Install additional measures as necessary to prevent erosion or damage to erosion control measures.
- C. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
 - 1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.
- D. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
 - 1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.17 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Transport surplus satisfactory soil offsite. Stockpile / spread topsoil per contract documents prior to soil removal from site.
 - 1. Remove waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK

SECTION 321216 - ASPHALT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for aggregate subbase and base courses.
 - 2. Division 32 Sections for other paving installed as part of crosswalks in asphalt pavement areas.

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
 - 1. Job-Mix Designs: For each job mix proposed for the Work.
- B. Material Certificates: For each paving material, from manufacturer. Certifying that each material complies with or exceeds specified requirements.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each paving material.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A paving-mix manufacturer registered with a history of successful performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who is trained and approved for installations required for this Project.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM D 3666 for testing indicated.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of the pavement specifications for asphalt paving work.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at a site acceptable to the Construction Manager.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to hot-mix asphalt paving including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Review proposed sources of paving materials, including capabilities and location of plant that will manufacture hot-mix asphalt.
 - b. Review condition of subgrade and preparatory work.
 - c. Review requirements for protecting paving work, including restriction of traffic during installation period and for remainder of construction period.

- d. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp, if rain is imminent or expected before time required for adequate cure, or if the following conditions are not met:
 - 1. Tack Coat: Minimum surface temperature of 50 deg F.
 - 2. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations in ASTM D 3910.
 - 3. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.
 - 4. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 50 deg F at time of placement and when base is dry.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND MIXES

- A. General: All work on the site as herein called for shall be done in accord with the American Public Works Association (APWA), Kansas City Metropolitan Chapter, Division II, "Construction and Materials Specifications for Paving", Section 2200, latest edition. The work herein required is not of the magnitude of work described in the aforesaid Standard Specification, therefore only applicable limitations will be enforced. However, this is not a relaxing of the requirements for the quality of the work. When work is obviously substandard, necessary tests will be made for compliance to the specifications. Work found to be in noncompliance with the specification shall be removed and replaced at the expense of the Contractor, including the costs of all tests.
 - 1. Use locally available materials and gradations that exhibit a satisfactory record of previous installations.
- B. Base Course Mix: Conform to requirements for mix designations APWA Type 1-01, per section 2205 of referenced APWA Specifications. Recycled content per APWA specifications allowed.
- C. Surface Course Mix: Conform to requirements for mix designation APWA Type 3-01, per Section 2205 of referenced APWA Specifications. Recycled content per APWA specifications allowed.
- D. Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, ready-mixed complying with AASHTO M248, Type I.
 - 1. Colors: White.

2.2 ASPHALT-AGGREGATE MIXTURE

- A. Provide plant-mixed, hot-laid asphalt-aggregate mixture complying with ASTM D 3515 and as recommended by local paving authorities to suit project conditions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to begin paving.

- B. Proof-roll subgrade below proposed pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades. Proof-roll within two days of paving operations.
 - 1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 - 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed to the proper moisture content and density.
 - 3. After proof rolling and repairing deep subgrade deficiencies, the entire subgrade should be scarified to a depth of 8 inches and uniformly compacted to at least 95% of the standard proctor maximum dry density to provide a uniform subgrade for pavement construction. Moisture content and density of subgrade to be checked within two days prior to the commencement of paving operations.
- C. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, without additional compensation.
- D. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. General: Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
- B. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.
 - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
 - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

3.3 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

- A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.
 - 1. Place hot-mix asphalt base course in number of lifts and thicknesses indicated.
 - 2. Place hot-mix asphalt surface course in single lift.
 - 3. Spread mix at minimum temperature required by the mix design and outside temperature.
 - 4. Begin applying mix along centerline of crown for crowned sections and on high side of one-way slopes unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
- B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 10 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
 - 1. After first strip has been placed and rolled, place succeeding strips and extend rolling to overlap previous strips. Complete a section of asphalt base course before placing asphalt surface course.
- C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

3.4 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions, with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.
 - 1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
 - 2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
 - 3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.
 - 4. Construct transverse joints at each point where paver ends a day's work and resumes work at a subsequent time.
 - 5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.

6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

3.5 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or with vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
 1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
 1. Average Density: 96 percent of reference laboratory density according to ASTM D 6927, but not less than 94 percent nor greater than 100 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Edge Shaping: While surface is being compacted and finished, trim edges of pavement to proper alignment. Bevel edges while asphalt is still hot; compact thoroughly.
- F. Repairs: Remove paved areas that are defective or contaminated with foreign materials and replace with fresh, hot-mix asphalt. Compact by rolling to specified density and surface smoothness.
- G. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- H. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

3.6 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow paving to age for 5 days before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.

3.7 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Pavement Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
 1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/4 inch.
 2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
- B. Pavement Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
 1. Base Course: 1/4 inch.
 2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.
 3. Crowned Surfaces: Test with crowned template centered and at right angle to crown. Maximum allowable variance from template is 1/4 inch.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.
- C. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
- D. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to ASTM standards.
 - 1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
 - 2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
 - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 cores taken.
 - b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
- E. Replace and compact hot-mix asphalt where core tests were taken.
- F. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

3.9 DISPOSAL

- A. Except for material indicated to be recycled, remove excavated materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
 - 1. Do not allow milled materials to accumulate on-site.

END OF SECTION 321216

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK

SECTION 321313 - CONCRETE PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Curbs and gutters.
 - 2. Walks.
 - 3. Driveways.
 - 4. Pavement.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 321373 "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for joint sealants in expansion and contraction joints within concrete paving and in joints between concrete paving and asphalt paving or adjacent construction.
- C. All concrete shall conform with the Kansas City Metro Materials Board minimum 4000 PSI granite mix (KCMMB 4K). If there are any contradictions to this mix in this specification, the KCMMB 4K mix shall govern.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Other Action Submittals:
 - 1. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified ready-mix concrete manufacturer, and testing agency.
- D. Material Certificates: For the following, from manufacturer:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
 - 3. Admixtures.
 - 4. Curing compounds.
 - 5. Applied finish materials.
 - 6. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
 - 7. Joint fillers.
- E. Material Test Reports: For each of the following:
 - 1. Aggregates. Include service-record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities" (Quality Control Manual - Section 3, "Plant Certification Checklist").
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
 - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
- C. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- D. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review methods and procedures related to concrete paving, including but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Concrete mixture design.
 - b. Quality control of concrete materials and concrete paving construction practices.
 - 2. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with concrete paving to attend, including the following:
 - a. Contractor's superintendent.
 - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
 - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
 - d. Concrete paving subcontractor.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
 - 1. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of 100 feet or less. Do not use notched and bent forms.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185/A 185M, fabricated from steel wire into flat sheets.
- B. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60; deformed.
- C. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 plain-steel bars. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- D. Tie Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of same type, brand, and source throughout Project:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, gray or white portland cement Type I.
 - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C.
 - 2. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag or Type IP, portland-pozzolan cement.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: Aggregates shall be in accordance with KCMMB-4K specifications. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service-record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar paving applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement and shall meet KCMMB 4K mix.
- C. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

2.4 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 3, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- C. Water: Potable.
- D. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular, film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Axim Italcementi Group, Inc.; Caltexol CIMFILM.
 - b. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC; Confilm.
 - c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
 - d. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Aquafilm.
 - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film (J-74).
 - f. Edoco by Dayton Superior; BurkeFilm.
 - g. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Eucobar.
 - h. Kaufman Products, Inc.; VaporAid.
 - i. Lambert Corporation; LAMBCO Skin.
 - j. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-CON.
 - k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; EVAPRE.
 - l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
 - m. Nox-Crete Products Group; MONOFILM.
 - n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
 - o. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Film.
 - p. Symons by Dayton Superior; Finishing Aid.
 - q. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-2120 TRI-FILM.
 - r. Unitex; PRO-FILM.
 - s. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.; Certi-Vex EnvioAssist.

- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; A-H Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
 - b. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
 - c. Conspec by Dayton Superior; D.O.T. Resin Cure, DSSCC Clear Resin Cure.
 - d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
 - e. Edoco by Dayton Superior; DSSCC Clear Resin Cure, Resin Emulsion Cure V.O.C. (Type I).
 - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Kurez W VOX.
 - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilin 420.
 - h. Lambert Corporation; AQUA KURE - CLEAR.
 - i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M CURE R.
 - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100-CLEAR SERIES.
 - k. Nox-Crete Products Group; Resin Cure E.
 - l. SpecChem, LLC; PaveCure Rez.
 - m. Symons by Dayton Superior; Resi-Chem Clear.
 - n. Tamms Industries, Inc., Euclid Chemical Company (The); TAMMSCURE WB 30C.
 - o. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation.
 - p. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.

2.5 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Joint Fillers: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork in preformed strips.
- B. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, two-component epoxy resin capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces; of class suitable for application temperature, of grade complying with requirements, and of the following types:
 - 1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- C. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid, set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of 1/8 to 1/4 inch.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ChemMasters; Exposee.
 - b. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Delay S.
 - c. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Etch (J-73).
 - d. Edoco by Dayton Superior; True Etch Surface Retarder.
 - e. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Surface Retarder Formula S.
 - f. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Expose.
 - g. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; TOP-STOP.
 - h. Metalcrete Industries; Surfard.
 - i. Nox-Crete Products Group; CRETE-NOX TA.
 - j. Scofield, L. M. Company; LITHOTEX Top Surface Retarder.
 - k. Sika Corporation, Inc.; Rugasol-S.
 - l. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Etch.
 - m. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-6000 Concrete Surface Retarder.
 - n. Unitex; TOP-ETCH Surface Retarder.
 - o. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.; Certi-Vex Envioset.

2.6 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience. Use ASTM C150, Type 1 – portland cement. Aggregates per KCMMB-4K specifications.
 - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
 - 2. When automatic machine placement is used, determine design mixtures and obtain laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements.
- B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:

1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 4000 psi.
 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45.
 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches plus or minus 1 inch for paving and 2" plus or minus one inch for curbs and gutters.
- C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
1. Air Content: 6 percent plus or minus 1 percent.
- D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
- F. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage by weight of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements as follows:
1. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.
 2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
 3. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.

2.7 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and ASTM C 1116/C 1116M. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
1. For concrete batches of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
 2. For concrete batches larger than 1 cu. yd., increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Notify testing agency when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. Proof-roll subgrade below proposed pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades. Proof-roll within two days of paving operations.
1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
 2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed to the proper moisture content and density.
 3. After proof rolling and repairing deep subgrade deficiencies, the entire subgrade should be scarified to a depth of 8 inches and uniformly compacted to at least 95% of the standard proctor maximum dry density to provide a uniform subgrade for pavement construction. Moisture content and density of subgrade to be checked within two days prior to the commencement of paving operations.
- C. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, without additional compensation.

- D. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
- C. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
- D. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- E. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M.
- F. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) overlap of adjacent mats.

3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.
 - 1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of paving strips unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
 - 3. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent or epoxy bonding adhesive at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
 - 4. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
 - 5. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
 - 1. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.

3. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
 4. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
 5. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
 6. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows:
1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate grooving-tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 - a. Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within 3 inches either way from centers of dowels.
 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
 - a. Tolerance: Ensure that sawed joints are within 3 inches either way from centers of dowels.
 3. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- E. Edging: After initial floating, tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging-tool marks on concrete surfaces.

3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast-in.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and steel reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
- F. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- G. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
 1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
- H. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.
- I. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.
- J. Curbs and Gutters: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.
- K. Slip-Form Paving: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce paving to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.

1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of slip-form paving machine during operations.
- L. Cold-Weather Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:
1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
- M. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
 3. Fog-spray forms and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.7 FLOAT FINISHING

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
1. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.
 2. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.

3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
- B. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.
- D. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- E. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound or a combination of these as follows:
1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears occurring during installation or curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.

3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas that have been subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

3.9 PAVING TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 and as follows:
 1. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
 2. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
 3. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- long, unlevelled straightedge not to exceed 1/2 inch.
 4. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/2 inch per 12 inches of tie bar.
 5. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: 1 inch.
 6. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: 1/4 inch.
 7. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: 1/4 inch per 12 inches of dowel.
 8. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
 9. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
 10. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

3.10 CONCRETE CURBS

- A. Install curbs per plan details.

3.11 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow paving to age for 30 days before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed.

3.13 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by Architect.
- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.

- D. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 321313

SECTION 321373 - CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cold-applied joint sealants.
 - 2. Hot-applied joint sealants.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 321216 "Asphalt Paving" for constructing joints between concrete and asphalt pavement.
 - 2. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for constructing joints in concrete pavement.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Pavement-Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, from manufacturer.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for joint sealants.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer.
2. When joint substrates are wet.
3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

2.2 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Silicone Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM D 5893, Type NS.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crafcro Inc., an ERGON company; RoadSaver Silicone.
 - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 888.
 - c. Pecora Corporation; 301 NS.
- B. Single-Component, Self-Leveling, Silicone Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM D 5893, Type SL.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crafcro Inc., an ERGON company; RoadSaver Silicone SL.
 - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 890-SL.
 - c. Pecora Corporation; 300 SL.
- C. Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; Urexpan NR-200.

2.3 HOT-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant for Concrete: ASTM D 3406.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crafcro Inc., an ERGON company; Superseal 444/777.
- B. Hot-Applied, Single-Component Joint Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: ASTM D 6690, Types I, II, and III.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Hi-Spec or Sealtight 3405.
 - b. Right Pointe; D-3405 Hot Applied Sealant.

2.4 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide joint-sealant backer materials that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

- B. Round Backer Rods for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- C. Round Backer Rods for Cold-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 3, of diameter and density required to control joint-sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.
- D. Backer Strips for Cold- and Hot-Applied Joint Sealants: ASTM D 5249; Type 2; of thickness and width required to control joint-sealant depth, prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant, and fill remainder of joint opening under sealant.

2.5 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Joint-Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install joint-sealant backings of kind indicated to support joint sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of joint-sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear joint-sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent joint-sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install joint sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place joint sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

- E. Tooling of Nonsag Joint Sealants: Immediately after joint-sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to the following requirements to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint:
 - 1. Remove excess joint sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
- F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess joint sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses, by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants, during and after curing period, from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations in repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

3.6 PAVEMENT-JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Joints within cement concrete pavement:
 - 1. Joint Location:
 - a. Expansion and isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete pavement.
 - b. Other joints as indicated.
 - 2. Silicone Joint Sealant for Concrete: Single component, nonsag or single component, self-leveling.
 - 3. Urethane Joint Sealant for Concrete: Multicomponent, pourable.
 - 4. Hot-Applied Joint Sealant for Concrete: Single component.
 - 5. Joint-Sealant Color: Grey.
- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Joints between cement concrete and asphalt pavement.
 - 1. Joint Location:
 - a. Joints between concrete and asphalt pavement.
 - 2. Hot-Applied Joint Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Single component.
 - 3. Retain subparagraph below if joint sealants specified are offered in a choice of colors and colors are not specified on Drawings. Typically, color choice is not available for pavement joint sealants.
 - 4. Joint-Sealant Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

END OF SECTION 321373

SECTION 323113 - CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Chain-link fences and gates (323113.A01).
 - 2. Polymer-coated chain-link fences (323113.A02).
 - 3. Swing gates (323113.A03).
 - 4. Privacy slats.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for cast-in-place concrete for post footings, concrete equipment bases/pads for gate operators and controls.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. The Contractor shall provide all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary for, and incidental to, the installation of chain link fence and gates, as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.
- B. All materials must be domestic.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Chain-link fence and gate framework shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7:
 - 1. Minimum Post Size: Determine according to ASTM F 1043 for framework up to 6 feet high, and post spacing not to exceed 10 feet.
 - 2.
- B. Delegated Design: Design chain-link fences and gates, and netting systems including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Structural Performance: All products framework shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7:
 - 1. Chain-link: Minimum Post Size and Maximum Spacing: Determine according to CLFMI WLG 2445, based on mesh size and pattern specified and on the following:
 - a. Wind Loads: 90 MPH
 - b. Exposure Category: C
 - c. Fence Height: 4-10 feet
 - d. Post Height: 6.5 – 13.5 feet
 - e. Post Spacing: 10 feet
 - f. Material Group: IA, ASTM F 1043, Schedule 40 steel pipe
 - g. Uniform live load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction
 - h. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction (Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently)
 - 2. Ornamental: Minimum Post Size and Maximum Spacing: Determine according to CLFMI WLG 2445, based on mesh size and pattern specified and on the following:
 - a. Wind Loads: 90 MPH
 - b. Exposure Category: C
 - c. Fence Height: 6 feet
 - d. Post Height: 9 feet
 - e. Post Spacing: 8 feet
 - f. Material Group: Steel , ASTM A653/A653M
 - g. Uniform live load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction

- h. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction (Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently)

D. Lightning Protection System: Maximum grounding-resistance value of 25 ohms under normal dry conditions.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each fence material and for each color specified.
 - 1. Provide Samples 8 to 12 inches in length for linear materials and 12 inch square for fence fabric.
- D. Delegated Design Submittal for Baseball Fencing: For chain-link fences and framework indicated to comply with requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of chain-link fence, from manufacturer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For framing strength according to ASTM F 1043.
- C. Sample of special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with standards of the Chain Link Fence Manufacturer's Institute.
- B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify layout information for chain-link fences shown on Drawings in relation to property survey and existing structures. Verify dimensions by field measurements.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace components of chain-link fences and gates that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CHAIN-LINK FENCE FABRIC

- A. General: Provide fabric in one-piece heights measured between top and bottom of outer edge of selvage knuckle or twist. Comply with CLFMI Product Manual and with requirements indicated below:
 - 1. Fabric Height: 6'-0".
 - 2. Steel Wire Fabric: Wire with a diameter of 0.148 inch.
 - a. Mesh Size: 2 inches.
 - b. Polymer-Coated Fabric: ASTM F 668, Class 2a over zinc-coated steel wire.
 - 1) Color: Match color of existing PVC coated fencing on site, complying with ASTM F 934.
 - c. Coat selvage ends of fabric that is metallic coated before the weaving process with manufacturer's standard clear protective coating.
 - 3. Selvage: Knuckled at both selvages.

2.2 FENCE FRAMING

- A. Posts and Rails: Comply with ASTM F 1043 for framing, including rails, braces, and line; terminal; and corner posts. Provide members with minimum dimensions and wall thickness according to ASTM F 1043 or ASTM F 1083 based on the following:
 - 1. Fence Height: 72 inches.
 - 2. Heavy Industrial Strength: Material Group IA, round steel pipe, Schedule 40.
 - a. Line Post: 2.375 inches in diameter.
 - b. End, Corner and Pull Post: 2.875 inches in diameter.
 - 3. Horizontal Framework Members: Top rails complying with ASTM F 1043.
 - a. Top Rail: 1.66 inches in diameter.
 - 4. Brace Rails: Comply with ASTM F 1043.
 - 5. Metallic Coating for Steel Framing:
 - a. Type A, consisting of not less than minimum 2.0-oz./sq. ft. average zinc coating per ASTM A 123/A 123M or 4.0-oz./sq. ft. zinc coating per ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 6. Polymer coating over metallic coating.
 - a. Color: Refer to Paragraph 2.1 A of this Section.

2.3 TENSION WIRE

- A. Polymer-Coated Steel Wire: 0.177-inch- diameter, tension wire complying with ASTM F 1664, Class 2a over zinc-coated steel wire.
 - 1. Color: Refer to Paragraph 2.1 A of this Section.

2.4 FITTINGS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM F 626.
- B. Post Caps: Provide for each post.
 - 1. Provide line post caps with loop to receive tension wire or top rail.
- C. Rail and Brace Ends: For each gate, corner, pull, and end post.
- D. Rail Fittings: Provide the following:
 - 1. Top Rail Sleeves: Pressed-steel or round-steel tubing not less than 6 inches long.
 - 2. Rail Clamps: Line and corner boulevard clamps for connecting intermediate rails in the fence line-to-line posts.
- E. Tension and Brace Bands: Pressed steel.
- F. Tension Bars: Steel, length not less than 2 inches shorter than full height of chain-link fabric. Provide one bar for each gate and end post, and two for each corner and pull post, unless fabric is integrally woven into post.

- G. Truss Rod Assemblies: Steel, hot-dip galvanized after threading rod and turnbuckle or other means of adjustment.
- H. Tie Wires, Clips, and Fasteners: According to ASTM F 626.
 - 1. Standard Round Wire Ties: For attaching chain-link fabric to posts, rails, and frames, complying with the following:
 - a. Hot-Dip Galvanized Steel: 0.106-inch- diameter wire; galvanized coating thickness matching coating thickness of chain-link fence fabric.
- I. Finish:
 - 1. Metallic Coating for Pressed Steel or Cast Iron: Not less than 1.2 oz. /sq. ft. zinc.
 - a. Polymer coating over metallic coating.

2.5 SWING GATES

- A. General: ASTM F 900 for gate posts and double swing gate types.
 - 1. Gate Leaf Width: As indicated.
 - 2. Gate Fabric Height: 72 inches.
 - 3. Framework Member Sizes and Strength: Based on gate fabric height 6 feet.
- B. Pipe and Tubing:
 - 1. Zinc-Coated Steel: ASTM F 1043 and ASTM F 1083; protective black PVC coating and finish to match fence framework.
 - 2. Gate Posts: Round tubular steel.
 - 3. Gate Frames and Bracing: Round tubular steel.
- C. Frame Corner Construction: Welded for vehicular gates and assembled with corner fittings for pedestrian gates.
- D. Hardware:
 - 1. Hinges: 180-degree swing in direction indicated. Basis-of-Design Products: Hinges shall be manufactured by "Cox Hinges."
 - 2. Latches permitting operation from one sides of gate. Refer to detail on Drawings. Basis-of-Design Products for latches is "DAK."
 - 3. Cane Bolt "Gate Stop": Provide gate stops for pedestrian gates consisting of mushroom-type flush plate with anchors, set in concrete, and designed to engage a center drop rod or plunger bar. Include a locking device and padlock eyes as an integral part of latch, permitting both gate leaves to be locked with a single padlock.
 - 4. Keeper: Provide a keeper for vehicular gates that automatically engages gate leaf and holds it in the open position until manually released.
 - 5. Padlock: Lockable and unlockable from both sides of gate with key.
 - 6. Closer: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 7. Exit Device: Manufacturer's standard as acceptable to Architect.

2.6 SWING GATE POSTS

- A. Pipe: 2.875 inches OD, (Schedule 40).
 - 1. Polymer coating over metallic coating.
 - a. Color: Refer to Paragraph 2.1 A of this Section.

2.7 SWING GATE FRAMES

- A. Class B Steel Tubing: 1.90 inches OD, 2.28 lb. per linear ft; SS-40 Fence Pipe as manufactured by Allied Tube and Conduit Corp., Harvey, IL., or equal.
 - 1. Polymer coating over metallic coating.
 - a. Color: Refer to Paragraph 2.1 A of this Section.
- B. Assemble gate frames by using fully coped welds for rigid connections, as shown on the Drawings or on Shop Drawings approved by the Engineer.

2.8 GROUT AND ANCHORING CEMENT

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout, recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.
- B. Erosion-Resistant Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with potable water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended in writing by manufacturer, for exterior applications.

2.9 PRIVACY SLATS

- A. Fiber-Glass-Reinforced Plastic Slats: UV-light-stabilized fiber-glass-reinforced plastic, not less than 0.06 inch thick, sized to fit mesh specified for direction indicated, with vandal-resistant fasteners and lock strips.
- B. Plastic Weave Roll: Produced with flexible polyethylene (LDPE) with ultra violet (UV) inhibitors.
 - 1. Standard size: 1 7/8 inches by 0.24 inches.
 - 2. Length: Each roll is 250 feet long and covers 40 square feet of fence.
 - 3. Wind Load and Privacy Factor: 75 percent.
- C. Limited Warranty: 5-year, pro-rata warranty against breakage under normal conditions.
- D. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for a verified survey of property lines and legal boundaries, site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install chain-link fencing to comply with ASTM F 567 and more stringent requirements indicated.
 - 1. Install fencing on established boundary lines inside property line.

3.4 CHAIN-LINK FENCE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Presence of hard matter and rock shall be assumed.
- B. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts to diameters and spacing indicated, in firm, undisturbed soil. Excavation for posts shall not be less than 3 feet in depth.
- C. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.

1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
 2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts to dimensions indicated and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
 - a. Concealed Concrete: Top 2 inches below grade to allow covering with surface material.
 - b. Extend post to specified excavation depth, but not closer than 3 inches to bottom of concrete.
- D. Terminal Posts: Locate terminal end, corner, and gate posts per ASTM F 567 and terminal pull posts at changes in horizontal or vertical alignment of 30 degrees or more.
- E. Line Posts: Space line posts uniformly at 10 feet max. o.c.
- F. Tension Wire: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Pull wire taut, without sags. Fasten fabric to tension wire with 0.120-inch- diameter hog rings of same material and finish as fabric wire, spaced a maximum of 24 inches o.c. Install tension wire in locations indicated before stretching fabric. Provide horizontal tension wire at the following locations:
1. Extended along bottom of fence fabric. Install bottom tension wire within 6 inches of bottom of fabric and tie to each post with not less than same diameter and type of wire.
- G. Top Rail: Install according to ASTM F 567, maintaining plumb position and alignment of fencing. Run rail continuously through line post caps, bending to radius for curved runs and terminating into rail end attached to posts or post caps fabricated to receive rail at terminal posts. Provide expansion couplings as recommended in writing by fencing manufacturer.
- H. Chain-Link Fabric: Apply fabric to inside of enclosing framework. Leave 1 inch between finish grade or surface and bottom selvage unless otherwise indicated. Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails, and tension wires. Anchor to framework so fabric remains under tension after pulling force is released.
- I. Tension or Stretcher Bars: Thread through fabric and secure to end, corner, pull, and gate posts with tension bands spaced not more than 15 inches o.c.
- J. Tie Wires: Use wire of proper length to firmly secure fabric to line posts and rails. Attach wire at one end to chain-link fabric, wrap wire around post a minimum of 180 degrees, and attach other end to chain-link fabric per ASTM F 626. Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to individuals and clothing.
1. Maximum Spacing: Tie fabric to line posts at 12 inches o.c. and to braces at 24 inches o.c.
- K. Fasteners: Install nuts for tension bands and carriage bolts on the side of the fence opposite the fabric side. Peen ends of bolts or score threads to prevent removal of nuts.
- L. Intermediate and Bottom Rails: Install and secure to posts with fittings.
- M. Privacy Slats: Install slats in direction indicated, securely locked in place.
1. Vertically, for privacy factor of 70 to 75.

3.5 GATE INSTALLATION

- A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach fabric as for fencing. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Automatic Gate Operator: Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices. Adjust operators, controls, safety devices, and limit switches.
1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Lubricate hardware, gate operator, and other moving parts.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain chain-link fences.

END OF SECTION 323113

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 323119 - DECORATIVE METAL FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Decorative metallic-coated-steel tubular picket fences (323119.A01).
 - 2. Swing gates (323119.A02).
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for post concrete fill.
 - 2. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for push exit device for swing gate.
 - 3. Section 310500 "Site Clearing and Earthwork" for site excavation, fill, and backfill where decorative metal fences and gates are located.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include dimensioned illustrations of each gate.
- B. Shop Drawings: For gates and gate operators. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 2. Submit drawings for slide gate operator showing connections to adjacent construction, range of travel, and all electrical and mechanical connections to the operator. All underground runs of electrical lines and inductive vehicle obstruction loop locations shall be indicated on drawings. Drawings shall also show the size and location of the concrete mounting pad.
- C. Samples: For each fence and gate material specified.
 - 1. Provide Samples 12 inches square of decorative steel fence and of decorative aluminum gate. Sample shall include top rail and extended pickets in color specified.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for decorative metallic-coated steel tubular picket fences, including finish, indicating compliance with referenced standard and other specified requirements.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For gate operators to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Gate Operators: A company specializing in the manufacture of gate operators with a minimum of five years experience manufacturing gate operators of this type and design.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- C. Installer Qualification for Gate Operators: A minimum of three years experience installing similar equipment.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Provide ten year warranty, from the date of purchase, for defects in material and workmanship, including protection against cracking, peeling, blistering and corrosion (rusting).

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Lightning-Protection System: Maximum grounding-resistance value of 25 ohms under normal dry conditions.

2.2 DECORATIVE METALLIC-COATED-STEEL TUBULAR PICKET FENCES

- A. Decorative Metal Fences: Comply with ASTM F 2408, for light industrial (commercial) application (class).
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Estate Ornamental Fence" with standard picket spacing by Fortress Fence Products, or comparable product accepted and approved by Architect prior to bidding.
- B. Posts: Provide fencing manufacturer's standard sizes and metal thicknesses, but not less than the following:
 - 1. Posts: Square tubes, not less than 3 by 3 inches, formed from 14 gauge ASTM 500 galvanized welded and formed steel tubing with powder-coated factory finish.
- C. Post Caps: Formed from steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after forming
- D. Rails: Provide manufacturer's standard tube rails
 - 1. Size: 1-1/2 inch by 1-1/2 inch
 - 2. Metal and Thickness: Formed from 16 gauge ASTM 500 galvanized welded and formed steel tubing
- E. Pickets: Square tubes.
 - 1. Size: 3/4 -inch square.
 - 2. Metal and Thickness: Formed from 18 gauge ASTM 500 galvanized welded and formed steel tubing.
 - 3. Terminate tops of pickets at top rail for flush top appearance.
 - 4. Picket Spacing: 6-1/16 inches clear, maximum.
 - 5. Pickets shall pass through bottom rail and terminate 2 inches above finished grade.
- F. Horizontal Supports:
 - 1. Size: 3/4 -inch square.
 - 2. Metal and Thickness: Formed from 16 gauge ASTM 500 galvanized welded and formed steel tubing.
- G. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard concealed fastening system.
- H. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Galvanized-steel sheet or aluminum-zinc, alloy-coated steel sheet.
- I. Galvanizing: For components indicated to be galvanized and for which galvanized coating is not specified in ASTM F 2408, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M. For hardware items, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- J. Finish: Powder coating. Color shall be black.

- K. Infill Pickets: Pre-drilled 3/4 inch by 6" composite boards. Length as indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturers Standard options.

2.3 SWING GATES

- A. General: Gate shall match adjacent decorative fencing.
- B. Gate Configuration: As indicated.
- C. Gate Frame Height: Match height of adjacent decorative fencing.
- D. Gate Opening Width: As indicated.
- E. Posts: Provide fencing manufacturer's standard sizes and metal thicknesses, but not less than the following:
 - 1. Posts: Square tubes, not less than 3 by 3 inches, formed from 14 gauge ASTM 500 galvanized welded and formed steel tubing with powder-coated factory finish.
- F. Uprights:
 - 1. Size: 2 by 2 inch.
 - 2. Metal and Thickness: Formed from 16 gauge ASTM 500 galvanized welded and formed steel tubing
- G. Rails: Provide manufacturer's standard tube rails
 - 1. Size: 2 inch by 2 inch.
 - 2. Metal and Thickness: Formed from 16 gauge ASTM 500 galvanized welded and formed steel tubing
- H. Pickets: Square tubes.
 - 1. Size: 3/4 - inch square.
 - 2. Metal and Thickness: Formed from 18 gauge ASTM 500 galvanized welded and formed steel tubing.
- I. Horizontal Supports:
 - 1. Size: 3/4 -inch square.
 - 2. Metal and Thickness: Formed from 16 gauge ASTM 500 galvanized welded and formed steel tubing.
- J. Infill: Comply with requirements for adjacent fence.
- K. Picket Size, Configuration, and Spacing: Comply with requirements for adjacent fence.
- L. Hardware: Latches permitting operation from both sides of gate, hinges, and keepers for each gate leaf more than 5 feet wide. Provide center gate stops and cane bolts for pairs of gates. Fabricate latches with integral eye openings for padlocking; padlock accessible from both sides of gate.
- M. Hinges: BHMA A156.1, Grade 1, suitable for exterior use.
 - 1. Function: 39 - Full surface, triple weight, antifriction bearing.
 - 2. Material: Wrought steel, forged steel, cast steel, or malleable iron; galvanized.
- N. Cane Bolts: Provide for inactive leaf of pairs of gates. Fabricated from 1/2-inch- diameter, round steel bars, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Finish to match gates. Provide galvanized-steel pipe strikes to receive cane bolts in both open and closed positions.
- O. Finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA Guideline 1, [Finish #2 - completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay] [Finish #3 - partially dressed weld with splatter removed] [Finish #4 - good-quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter].
- P. Galvanizing: For items other than hardware that are indicated to be galvanized, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M. For hardware items, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- Q. Metallic-Coated-Steel Finish: Match adjacent decorative fencing.

2.4 ALUMINUM

- A. Aluminum, General: Provide alloys and tempers with not less than the strength and durability properties of alloy and temper designated in paragraphs below for each aluminum form required.
- B. Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5.
- C. Tubing: ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6.
- D. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 6061-T6.
- E. Die and Hand Forgings: ASTM B 247, Alloy 6061-T6.
- F. Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy A356.0-T6.

2.5 STEEL AND IRON

- A. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Rails and Pickets shall be Grade A cold-rolled steel formed and welded tubing, conforming with ASTM 500 with G 60 Zinc coating (0.60oz/ft²) total inside and outside surfaces in accordance with the ASTM A123 hot-dipped electroplating process.
- C. Tubing: ASTM A 500/A 500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- D. Bar Grating: NAAMM MBG 531.
 - 1. Bars: Hot-rolled steel strip, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel, Type B.
 - 2. Wire Rods: ASTM A 510.
- E. Uncoated Steel Sheet: Hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Structural Steel, Grade 45 or cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel, Grade 50.
- F. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural quality, Grade 50, with G90 coating.
- G. Aluminum-Zinc, Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, structural quality, Grade 50, with AZ60 coating.
- H. Castings: Either gray or malleable iron unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Gray Iron: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30.
 - 2. Malleable Iron: ASTM A 47/A 47M.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Concrete: Normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete complying with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi, 3-inch slump, and 1-inch maximum aggregate size.
- B. Nonshrink Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M and specifically recommended by manufacturer for exterior applications.

2.7 METALLIC-COATED-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Galvanized Finish: Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces with nonpetroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a zinc-phosphate conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

- C. Powder Coating: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply 2-coat finish consisting of [zinc-rich]epoxy prime coat and TGIC polyester topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils for topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions to achieve a minimum total dry film thickness of 4 mils.
 - 1. Color and Gloss: Manufacturer's standard Black.
 - 2. Comply with surface finish testing requirements in ASTM F 2408.

2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
 - 1. Color and Gloss: Black.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, construction layout, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by Architect.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.

3.3 DECORATIVE FENCE INSTALLATION

- A. Install fences according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts in firm, undisturbed soil. Excavate holes to a diameter of not less than 4 times post size and a depth of not less than 24 inches plus 3 inches for each foot or fraction of a foot that fence height exceeds 4 feet.
- C. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
 - 1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
 - 2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
 - a. Concealed Concrete: Top 2 inches below grade to allow covering with surface material. Slope top surface of concrete to drain water away from post.
 - 3. Space posts as recommended by manufacturer.

3.4 GATE INSTALLATION

- A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Lubricate hardware, gate operators, and other moving parts.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain gates.

END OF SECTION 323119

SECTION 334100 - STORM UTILITY DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Cleanouts.
 - 3. PVC drain basins.
 - 4. Stormwater inlets.
 - 5. End sections / pipe outfalls.
 - 6. Manholes / Junction Boxes.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Trench Drain: Include elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, and depths.
 - 2. Drain Basin: Include elevations, details, covers, and depths.
 - 3. Concrete Structures: Include elevations, sections, details, frames, covers, and depths.
 - 4. End Sections: Product specifications and grate protection.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.
- D. Handle stormwater inlets according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. HDPE Dual-Wall Pipe and Fittings NPS 3 to NPS 10: AASHTO M 252M, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.
 - 1. Soiltight Couplings: AASHTO M 252M, corrugated, matching tube and fittings.
- B. HDPE Dual-Wall Pipe and Fittings NPS 12 to NPS 60: AASHTO M 294M, Type S, with smooth waterway for coupling joints.
 - 1. Soiltight Couplings: AASHTO M 294M, corrugated, matching pipe and fittings.

2.2 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe: ASTM D1785 Schedule 40 PVC, with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.
- B. PVC pipe to be used as riser pipe for building downspouts below grade.

2.3 CONCRETE PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Reinforced-Concrete Sewer Pipe and Fittings conforming to ASTM C76.
 - 1. Bell-and-spigot ends with gasketed joints. O-ring gaskets shall be synthetic rubber and shall conform to ASTM C361 and ASTM C443.
 - 2. Class III, Wall B.

2.4 CLEANOUTS

- A. Plastic Cleanouts:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Canplas LLC.
 - b. IPS Corporation.
 - c. NDS Inc.
 - d. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Light Commercial Products Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
 - 2. Description: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.

2.5 PVC DRAIN BASINS

- A. Drain basins shall be manufactured from PVC pipe stock conforming to ASTM D1784 cell class 12454. Structure and pipe connections shall be watertight conforming to ASTM D3212.
 - 1. Frames and grates shall be ductile iron and shall meet loading requirements shown.

2.6 STORMWATER INLETS / MANHOLES / JUNCTION BOXES

- A. Curb inlets, manholes, and junction boxes per plan details.

2.7 PIPE OUTLETS

- A. Install concrete toe wall on pipe end section and turf reinforcement mat at pipe end sections. See plans for location and details.

- B. Pipe outfalls shall have HDPE or CMP pre-manufactured end sections.
- C. HDPE end sections shall conform to ASTM D3530 minimum cell classification 213320C. End sections shall have a toe plate to cast into a concrete toe wall.
- D. Corrugated metal end sections shall be fabricated from galvanized base metal, conform to ASTM A 760/A, and meet CMP pipe manufacturer design standards. End sections shall have a toe plate to cast into a concrete toe wall.

2.8 CONCRETE

- A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318, and the following:
 - 1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
 - 3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
 - 4. Water: Potable.
- B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.
 - 1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 185/A 185M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
 - 2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 deformed steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- D. When installing pipe under streets or other obstructions that cannot be disturbed, use pipe-jacking process of microtunneling.
- E. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
 - 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow.
 - 2. Install PE corrugated sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321.
 - 3. Install PVC sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
 - 4. Install reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ASTM C 1479 and ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual."

3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
 - 1. Join corrugated PE piping according to ASTM D 3212 for push-on joints.
 - 2. Join PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 891 for solvent-cemented joints.

3. Join reinforced-concrete sewer piping according to ACPA's "Concrete Pipe Installation Manual" for rubber-gasketed joints.
4. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type flexible couplings.

3.4 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
 1. Use Light-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in earth or unpaved foot-traffic areas.
 2. Use Heavy-Duty, top-loading classification cleanouts in vehicle-traffic service areas.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement and roads with tops flush with pavement surface.

3.5 PVC DRAIN BASINS

- A. PVC drain basins shall be installed per ASTM D2321 and manufacturer specifications.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Section 221413 "Storm Drainage Piping."
- B. Make connections to piping.
 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections unless a structure is indicated.
 2. Make connections to structures by cutting into existing unit and creating an opening large enough to allow 3 inches of concrete to be packed around entering connection. Cut end of connection pipe passing through pipe or structure wall to conform to shape of and be flush with inside wall unless otherwise indicated. On outside of pipe, manhole, or structure wall, encase entering connection in 6 inches of concrete for minimum length of 12 inches to provide additional support of collar from connection to undisturbed ground.
 - a. Use concrete that will attain a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Use epoxy-bonding compound as interface between new and existing concrete and piping materials.
 3. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.
 1. Use warning tape or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
 2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
 1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
 2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
 - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
 - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
 - c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
 - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
 - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
 3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.

4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
 2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
 4. Submit separate report for each test.
 5. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, UNI-B-6, and the following:
 - a. Exception: Piping with soiltight joints unless required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Option: Test plastic piping according to ASTM F 1417.
 - c. Option: Test concrete piping according to ASTM C 924.
- C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials. Flush with water.

END OF SECTION 334100

THIS PAGE LEFT BLANK